|  |
| --- |
| Reditus  By  Yashua M Lebowitz |
| Street Address  City, ST ZIP Code  Phone  Email |

Contents

[Reditus 1](#_Toc76405176)

[*Intro* 7](#_Toc76405177)

[Rediit Camp People 11](#_Toc76405178)

[Widow Quest 12](#_Toc76405179)

[High Priest Home 12](#_Toc76405180)

[Rediit Childless Couple 14](#_Toc76405181)

[Man Hogging Outhouse 14](#_Toc76405182)

[Kweh Tent 14](#_Toc76405183)

[Chief Hunter Home 15](#_Toc76405184)

[Corydon Deus Prison & Tower 15](#_Toc76405185)

[Ransom Quest 17](#_Toc76405186)

[Young Married Couple 21](#_Toc76405187)

[Rediit Herdsman 21](#_Toc76405188)

[Family with Lots of Kids 22](#_Toc76405189)

[Kids Fighting 22](#_Toc76405190)

[Temple Walker Devotees 23](#_Toc76405191)

[Camp Guards 23](#_Toc76405192)

[Hunter Tent 24](#_Toc76405193)

[Herdsman Tent 24](#_Toc76405194)

[Grave Yard 24](#_Toc76405195)

[Pimp Out My Droid Side Quest 25](#_Toc76405196)

[Theresa’s Tent 25](#_Toc76405197)

[Side Quest Girl by the well 26](#_Toc76405198)

[High Priest Quest 27](#_Toc76405199)

[High Priest after defeating bandits, 28](#_Toc76405200)

[Seer side quest 29](#_Toc76405201)

[Heremus Rose Side Quest 29](#_Toc76405202)

[The Heremus (Very subject to change) 31](#_Toc76405203)

[Misc 31](#_Toc76405204)

[Sandstorm Begins Again 31](#_Toc76405205)

[Where They Burn Blasphemers 31](#_Toc76405206)

[Hunters Camping 31](#_Toc76405207)

[Mount Corydon Deus 32](#_Toc76405208)

[Bandit Cave 32](#_Toc76405209)

[Augustus Party Skills and Survival Gameplay 35](#_Toc76405210)

[Enemies of Heremus 36](#_Toc76405211)

[Deep Heremus 36](#_Toc76405212)

[In First Campsite 36](#_Toc76405213)

[Around the Campfire 37](#_Toc76405214)

[Boremaug Boss 38](#_Toc76405215)

[Southern Ruins 38](#_Toc76405216)

[Quicksand 38](#_Toc76405217)

[Battle of the Heremus 39](#_Toc76405218)

[Neural Master 41](#_Toc76405219)

[Heremus A.I. Boss (use for later area) 41](#_Toc76405220)

[Dream Sequence 41](#_Toc76405221)

[Felnis Colony 42](#_Toc76405222)

[Historian Flashback 44](#_Toc76405223)

[Flashback 1: 44](#_Toc76405224)

[Flashback 2: 45](#_Toc76405225)

[Flashback 3: 47](#_Toc76405226)

[Hidden room quest. 49](#_Toc76405227)

[The Ruins of Vehere 49](#_Toc76405228)

[Ruins of Vehere Enemies 49](#_Toc76405229)

[Security Protocol 52](#_Toc76405230)

[Enemies in Magicius Facility 53](#_Toc76405231)

[Twisted Guerrilla 55](#_Toc76405232)

[Reviving Corydon Deus 55](#_Toc76405233)

[Escape from Magicius Facility 56](#_Toc76405234)

[Cart Mini Game 58](#_Toc76405235)

[Ehsran 59](#_Toc76405236)

[Residential Ruins of Vehere 60](#_Toc76405237)

[Enemies of Residential Ruins 60](#_Toc76405238)

[Cannibal Rediit 60](#_Toc76405239)

[Cannibal Rediit Boss 61](#_Toc76405240)

[Felnis’s Hideout Revisited 61](#_Toc76405241)

[Heremus at Night 63](#_Toc76405242)

[Enemies of Heremus at Night: 63](#_Toc76405243)

[Leonidas 65](#_Toc76405244)

[The Brooch and the Riddle Side Quest 66](#_Toc76405245)

[Lich Boss 68](#_Toc76405246)

[Rediit Camp Revisited 69](#_Toc76405247)

[Augustus and High Priest 71](#_Toc76405248)

[Rediit Camp People Revisited 72](#_Toc76405249)

[Mech Wannabe Side Quest Cont’d 73](#_Toc76405250)

[Caeser’s Marriage 73](#_Toc76405251)

[Heremus Rose Side Quest Continued 73](#_Toc76405252)

[Caeser’s Marriage Continued 74](#_Toc76405253)

[Reditus Crash Ceaser’s Marriage 75](#_Toc76405254)

[Rediit Camp Tactical Battle 79](#_Toc76405255)

[Mechanized Infantry 80](#_Toc76405256)

[Rediit Camp after Corydon Deus 84](#_Toc76405257)

[High Priest Death 86](#_Toc76405258)

[Temple of Corydon Deus Planning 87](#_Toc76405259)

[The Road to Albrook 88](#_Toc76405260)

[Enemies on Overworld Map 89](#_Toc76405261)

[Zen 89](#_Toc76405262)

[The People of Zen 89](#_Toc76405263)

[The Felnis and Inn 90](#_Toc76405264)

[Jester and Ali Botta 90](#_Toc76405265)

[Thief’s Family Home 91](#_Toc76405266)

[Thief’s Cave 92](#_Toc76405267)

[Enemies of Thieves Cave 92](#_Toc76405268)

[Ali Botta and the Mysterious Thief Boss 92](#_Toc76405269)

[Jester Skills 94](#_Toc76405270)

[Hamilton 95](#_Toc76405271)

[People of Hamilton 95](#_Toc76405272)

[Shady Man’s Fight Club 97](#_Toc76405273)

[Albrook Bully Boss 100](#_Toc76405274)

[Throw the match 101](#_Toc76405275)

[KMDM Mini Game Battle 102](#_Toc76405276)

[Fight for Honor 104](#_Toc76405277)

[KMDM Boss 105](#_Toc76405278)

[Shady man’s Heist 106](#_Toc76405279)

[Heist in Zen 108](#_Toc76405280)

[Alfonso’s Mansion 112](#_Toc76405281)

[Enemies of Alfonso’s mansion 112](#_Toc76405282)

[Jester’s Infiltration 112](#_Toc76405283)

[Airloft Mini Game 113](#_Toc76405284)

[Alfonso Proposition 114](#_Toc76405285)

[Alfonso Boss 114](#_Toc76405286)

[Jester’s Escape 115](#_Toc76405287)

[Hamilton Revisited 116](#_Toc76405288)

[Albrook 117](#_Toc76405289)

[Tandoor 117](#_Toc76405290)

[South Tonsorem 118](#_Toc76405291)

[Mountain Pass to Kohlingen 118](#_Toc76405292)

[Kohlingen 118](#_Toc76405293)

[Side Quest Girl by the well Cont’d 119](#_Toc76405294)

[Ocean Floor 119](#_Toc76405295)

[Gate of the Fabricius World 119](#_Toc76405296)

[The Fabricius World 120](#_Toc76405297)

[Tonsorem castle 121](#_Toc76405298)

[Terraee 121](#_Toc76405299)

[The Road to Ehsran 122](#_Toc76405300)

[Ehsran 122](#_Toc76405301)

[---Areas Opened Up By Dropship--- 122](#_Toc76405302)

[Excalibur 122](#_Toc76405303)

[The Tower of Corydon Deus 122](#_Toc76405304)

[Neo V Revisited 123](#_Toc76405305)

[Cannibal Rediit 123](#_Toc76405306)

[The Security Protocol Defense Bot 123](#_Toc76405307)

[---Areas Opened Up By Dropship--- 123](#_Toc76405308)

[The Island of Magus and Gustav the Magician 123](#_Toc76405309)

[Island of the Phoenix 123](#_Toc76405310)

[Inside the Cave of the Phoenix 124](#_Toc76405311)

[Leonidas Sword 124](#_Toc76405312)

[Ehsran Rocket 124](#_Toc76405313)

[Ehsran Rocket Launch 124](#_Toc76405314)

[Space 124](#_Toc76405315)

[The Moon 124](#_Toc76405316)

[The Party so Far 125](#_Toc76405317)

[Resputin the Great 125](#_Toc76405318)

[The Edifice of Corydon Deus 125](#_Toc76405319)

[The Redoubt of Corydon Deus 125](#_Toc76405320)

[The Gate Opens 126](#_Toc76405321)

***Intro***

When a man wishes to restore that which was lost he walks the path of the Reditus.

When a man no longer walks the path of the Reditus he becomes the Rediit.

Evil men and good men both walk the path of the Reditus, the heavens make no distinction between the two.

Thus begins our story as destiny calls a new man to walk the path of the Reditus. Those who follow him will be swept up in its irresistible calling.

Augustus: Where I hear the wind, there I hear your voice. I will follow the winds of the Heremus to the place you dwell and fulfill my destiny.

On the way to camp Augustus is ambushed by a Reditus drone.

Augustus: A Reditus drone in this weather!? How brazen they’ve become!

Augustus: It looks like he wants to fight, okay, bring it on!

During battle,

Augustus: He looks damaged, I might be able to survive this.

Rediit Man: It’s my job to light the lamps so that hunters find their way through the darkness on their way home.

Augustus entered camp frustrated stopping outside his tent.

Augustus: (Sighs)............I don't know how much more I can take of this. I’ve seen my dreams die and my hopes vanquished by the winds of the Heremus. The winds of my torment may also be the source of my redemption. I must do something.

Augustus enters tent

Augustus: Blasted Reditus. Every year they try to push us deeper into the Heremus. I think they want us dead for worshiping Corydon Deus. He must return soon or we will all die in these horrible conditions.

Caeser: If he returns father. All the Magicia disappeared when he disappeared. If magic no longer exists then how can he exist? He is the god of magic, correct? Then he is god of nothing! (35)

Augustus: You see.....

Augustus Wife: Sit down both of you for food and quit blabbering.

His wife serves food.

Augustus: Dark root porridge again! Yuk! I swear to Corydon dark roots permeate everything in this forsaken camp. Even the Yak milk has a tinge of its god-awful flavor!

Augustus Wife: The dark root nourishes and sustains us. It is a gift from Corydon Deus to keep us alive until his return.

Caeser: Start eating you old fool. (5)

Augustus: Tomorrow I'm going to do something. Magic must be revived. You watch! Insolent son! Corydon Deus will return and I will be rewarded for my faithfulness.

Caeser: You'll get yourself killed. (4)

Augustus: So be it. I’d rather die than live like this.

Augustus sits in silence.

Augustus: This old "Fool" is going to bed. I'm in the company of the "Wise" so I guess sleep is better than blank stares and silence. This "Fool" is speechless.

Caeser: Father, I'm sorry for my rudeness, but I think you should focus on the work that needs done around here. There are always drones and other machinery that needs repaired. The entire camp is reliant on you. We can't have you listlessly staring off into space. I’m still your apprentice and there is much more for me to learn. (59)

Augustus: I see what you're saying son, but still.......oh let it be. I'm going to bed. There is much work that has to be done tomorrow.

Caeser: That's the spirit Father.(4)

Augustus: Well, off to bed.

Caeser: Good night father. (4)

Augustus, unable to sleep, leaves his tent at night and goes outside.

Augustus: (Speaking to himself) I must journey to the ruins of Vehere through the Heremus. Only there I will find the answers I'm looking for, so help me Corydon Deus.

Caeser comes outside.

Caeser:   You can’t do this on your own old man.  The Reditus have countless security drones in the Heremus. No Rediit ever makes it back alive from the ruins of Vehere. It will be a perilous journey. They even speak of a robot which wanders the Heremus controlling the minds of its creatures making them do its bidding.  I cannot let you do this alone. (64)

Augustus: But what will your mother do if we both perish? It’s one thing to lose her husband, but also her only son.

Caeser: We will not perish, but rather we will overcome whatever obstacles lay out there before us. I cannot fail you because failure means death and I’m not going to lose my Father and my mother is not going to lose her husband. (42)

Caeser: I don’t care why you’re going, but if you must, I will see this thing through with you to the very end. (22)

Augustus: Your mother is going to kill me...but I cannot say no. The dictates of Corydon Deus speak of no greater sacrifice than a son willing to risk his life for other Rediits.

Caeser: Our God is a mysterious God whose teachings I don’t understand. Even our teachers are vague in their explanations of what happened in the past. Did he not destroy our world? If this is so, why are you so intent on reviving our God? (44)

Augustus (Quiet Pondering): I believe he destroyed our world for its own good, to purify its corruption. Even in this age of the Reditus, their technology and corruption pollutes and destroys our world.  Who’s to say Corydon Deus was wrong?

Caeser: Yes, but there might still be some good in the Reditus. The reason they persecute us is because our God destroyed the world. (24)

Augustus: He did not destroy our people, we prospered and we built a great tower. The one we have now pales in comparison to it. He wanted purity and sometimes to purify something you need to put the flame to it. Do you not want purity?

Ceaser: Yes, I mean, ok Father, he is pure and he is just. (12)

Augustus: He is pure and he is just.

Augustus: Now we have a long road ahead of us tomorrow. Try to get whatever sleep you can get, we leave at first light.

Augustus wakes up next morning ready to go, but he is opposed by his wife.

Augustus Wife: You wish to restore magic? Don't be such a fool! You can't create something from nothing. The source of all magic is gone. We live as prisoners to the Heremus for a reason. If you succeed you will only make things worse for us. Quit your stubbornness and come to your senses.

Augustus' wife tries to stop him.

Augustus: I'm going woman. Now stand aside. I’ll come back and I will bring our son back to you. Do not keep me from our sacred duty; the redemption of our people.

Augustus leaves the tent.

Caeser: Don't worry mother, I'll keep him safe. (10)

Augustus wife: I hope you find what you are looking for. I think you're going to destroy us all. (She begins sobbing).

Augustus:

Caeser:  Bye mother. I love you. (5)

Caeser leaves the tent.

The camp is alerted to Augustus’ departure.

Villagers:  Everyone.  He’s leaving.

The priest stops him on the way.

Priest: I know what you plan on doing Augustus.

Augustus: How did you know?

Caeser: Sorry Father. (2)

Augustus: I will return with all the answers we’ve all been searching for!  As we all know our answers must lie where our Lord hid his face and took away the magic from us because of the disbelief of the Reditus. I believe I will return the Rediits back to the glory we once knew when Corydon Deus walked among us!

Rediits:  Please don't leave! Who will fix our drones when they break down?

Rediits:  It's impossible! All who go deep into the Heremus never come back.

High Priest: Many have tried and failed. I've seen many widows cry after their husbands who failed to return. What makes you so different?

Augustus: The blood of Cid, the great engineer flows through me. Corydon Deus was with him and he is also with me. I will triumph over the Reditus who only believe in their precious minerals and technology.

High priest: I think….

Airloft bursts out of Augustus’ tent.

Airloft Description: A top-of-the-line drone model given to Augustus by the high priest to repair. Airloft was initially a Reditus drone but through a stroke of luck the Rediits shot him down. Augustus, the top engineer in the camp, found it difficult to repair and left it as a hopeless case.

High priest: Augustus it works!

Augustus: I thought I’d try one more time to fix him. I couldn’t sleep. Something must’ve clicked.

Ceaser: Would you look at that! (5)

Airloft: State directive.

High priest: Protect Augustus and Caeser at any cost as they travel through the Heremus.

Airloft: Protect Augustus and Caeser as they travel through the Heremus. State secondary directive.

High Priest: Self Destruct if captured by a Reditus.

Airloft: Directives confirmed. Initiating protocol.

Augustus: Thank you high priest for your generosity. I will return your drone.

High Priest:  Consider the drone as a gift for your faithful service to the Rediit cause. All the Rediits have been notified of your intentions.  Please stop by their tents.  They wish to help you in your journey.  Whenever one of you attempts this it revives a spark of hope in my heart.  May Corydon Deus be with you.

Airloft joins the party

High Priest: Augustus, come and see me later. I have some work for you.

Theresa: Ceaser, I need to speak to you. Come to my tent.

**Rediit Camp People**

Augustus Wife:  Who’s going to fix the gaping hole in our tent roof? I’ve never seen a drone suddenly come alive with such vivacity. He tore right through our tent. I’ll manage to fix it while you’re gone. Do you want to rest here before going?

Augustus Wife: I'll be fine while you are gone. I'll stay busy and before you know it you'll be here again and things will be like they were.

Shopkeeper1: I got weapons if you can call them that.

Shopkeeper2: Whaddaya want in the name of Corydon Deus.

Shopkeeper3: My husband works in the pit while I tend to the shop.

Lonely Woman: (Woman standing alone on top of tower)When I want to be alone I come up here for fresh air and to take in the view.  I want to see green.  Beautiful green.

**Rediit Herdsman**

Rediit Herdsman:  For as long as I can remember we have fed these cattle the dark root. It nourishes us and gives us life from the sustenance these cattle provide.

Reply 1: Augustus: Yes, the blessed dark root.

Reply 2: Augustus: Yuck, I can no longer tolerate the bloody tinge of the dark roots.

Rediit Herdsman Reply 1: He is pure and just to give us blessed sustenance.

Rediit Herdsman Reply 2: Don’t say such things Augustus, you know very well Corydon Deus will keep you alive with the dark root when you’re in Heremus.

Rediit Herdsman:  At night I also work as a blacksmith.  I pieced these suits together with parts I found in the Heremus.  All of our prayers to Corydon Deus are with you. Be careful with Reditus drones. Their guns pack a punch. You received 2 Hard Armor Suits.

Herdsman wife:  I never get any sleep with him working all night.  I wish he would just be a full time herdsman.

Temple Guard: Are you sure you spoke to everyone in the camp?  You will require as much help as possible. The Heremus is an unforgiving place. Self-reliance means self-destruction.

**Young Married Couple**

Young married wife:  Here is a sweater I was knitting for my husband to keep him cold at night on the Heremus. I want you to have it. You will need it more than he will.

Young Married Wife: Sometimes the droid's rays vary in temperature. This can protect you against their cold rays.

Young married husband: We are just married, but I don't know what kind of future we have in this world. I don't know if we should have had our child.

Baby: Wah! Wah!

**Family with Lots of Kids**

Mother:  How will we survive when we have so many kids? Most families can only support one, maybe two kids, but we have five. My husband is milking Yaks during the day and hunting with drones at night. What to do.

Young Child: I’ve been saving this money my entire life.  I give this to you.  I want to grow up to be like you.

Young Child: Don't blow that money on candy. I know I would.

Father: Birth control is impossible to get out here in the Heremus. Here take this.     Players received 2 Electric Shields.

After receiving electric shields,

Father: Take care. You never know when you'll need protection.

Small Girl: I'm almost the size of this bow. How am I going to use this? I can barely pull it back let alone lift it up. Please take this. I'm too young to be a hunter.  Player received a Great Bow.

Small Girl: I need to get married as soon as possible so my husband can hunt for me. What are my parents thinking?

Shotgun Boy: My father gave me a Shotgun Mk.4, but I seem to have misplaced its laser scope. Quietly take this. Shotgun Boy slides your laser scope.

Shotgun Boy: I better go outside and pretend to hunt before my parents say something.

Badshot Girl: I blew a hole through our tent yesterday. Take this before I shoot my eye out.

Badshot Girl: Because of the hole it's too cool here at night where I sleep.

No Sword For Me: I'm too young to be carrying around a weapon. My father says I need to start hunting because I have so many siblings. I'll let you borrow this.  Just give it back in 10 years.

You received a Scrap Sword.

**Kids Fighting**

Miriam: I might be pregnant, this child cannot be. If the temple guards find out I’m carrying a child outside the service of Corydon Deus the child and my life might both be in danger. I have to end its life.

Billy: If your Father comes to my tent again I swear to Corydon Deus…..

Tommy: Why don’t you talk to your Mother, it's not my fault……

Billy's Sister: The dictates of Corydon Deus state that once a woman’s husband has died she must remain a widow dedicating her life to the service of Corydon Deus.

Socrates: You might’ve heard what the dictates of Corydon Deus say. I can’t help it, I love Miriam. If rumors continue to spread about us I could be in serious trouble. The temple guards might even throw me in prison.

**Temple Walker Devotees**

Temple Walker: I took my vow to walk in front of Corydon Deus when I was twelve. Now I am twenty-four. My vow will end when I am thirty. Then I can take a wife and have children.

Temple Walker: We must always walk before Corydon Deus in absolute silence.

Temple Walker: It is a grave sin to disturb a member of the temple guard while he is walking in front of Corydon Deus.

Temple Walker: We walk before Corydon Deus at night and sleep while the others walk during the day.

# Widow Quest

Old Widow: My husband believed deep down in his heart that Corydon Deus will return and he left this camp with that hope in his heart. Alas, like so many fathers and husbands before him he went missing in the Heremus. Unlike other widows I still haven’t given up hope that after all these years he’s still alive. Please find something out there that will give a glimmer of hope to this old widow’s heart. Will you do it?

Choices:

1. Augustus: You know my quest is an arduous one, but if I find something that will brighten your heart and give you hope and strength I will surely bring it back to you.
2. Augustus: The quest we are on means almost certain death and you want us to find something that will remind you of your husband? This is too much for you to ask, sorry I cannot do it.

Widow Response:

1. Praise Corydon Deus! I don’t have much, but I will surely find something that I can reward you with if you do such a thing.
2. I endured much in this life, I didn’t expect to endure such cruelness from you Augustus. If you reconsider please come to me again.
3. Did you reconsider?

When player hasn’t found shotgun:

1. Reditt Widow: Did you find anything? Please make haste and find out what you can.

When Player Finds shotgun:

1. Reditt Widow: You found his shotgun…… how would he survive without it? This is strange. This is all you found right?
2. Augustus: Yes, this is all we found.
3. Reditt Widow: Something must have happened while he was traveling; I still won’t give up hope even after all these years. I will continue to wait. Thank you. Oh, and by the way, your reward is his shotgun. Be careful with that thing, it has a massive kick to it.

**Camp Guards**

Temple Guard: Making my rounds. Everyone should be following the rules of Corydon Deus...or else.

Lonely Woman: When I want to be alone I come up here for fresh air and to take in the view.  I want to see green.  Beautiful green.

Temple Guard in front of camp:  Augustus, how do you bear going out the Heremus?  It’s such a long distance to the mountain you meditate on.  Does Corydon Deus speak to you there?

Temple Guard: Take off your shoes. The place you're entering is holy.

Temple Guard in front of camp:  When I go to Mt. Corydon Deus all I hear is silence.  It’s scary to hear your own thoughts.  That’s why I never go anymore.  I like the sound of hustle and bustle in the camp.

**Hunter Tent**

Hunter: We sleep during the day and hunt beasts at night with drones and whatever weapons we can fashion. I hope we can maintain our drones while you are gone. I don't know how we will take on the beasts of the Heremus without them. I’ve been saving this armor for a rainy day in case mine were ever to break. You’ll need it more than me. I also have an extra one for you Caeser as well.

Augustus: Thank you for your kindness.

Caeser: I hope it fits.

**Graveyard**

Gravestone 1: 14,010 – 14,016. Adnan Mayor.  May you rest in peace Heremus Rose.

Gravestone 2: 14,006 – 14,082. Felix Burns. Your life was well lived. Very few live to see your days. May you rest in peace with Corydon Deus.

Gravestone 3: 13,996 – 14,020. Eunice Clare. You died in the hunt, the way you always wanted to go.

Gravestone 4: 14,100 – 14,100. Corydon Deus’s Angel. You died too early to know life; at least you won’t know the hardships of the Heremus.

Writing is not clear.

**High Priest Home**

High Priest Girl: Why don’t you talk to that secretary? If she asks you to wait I can help you out.

High Priest Girl: You actually waited. I think you missed out on an opportunity to see who the High Priest really is.

High Priest Girl: Waiting is sooo boring.

High Priest Girl: If you want to go up without waiting I can distract the secretary while you run upstairs.

If no,

High Priest Girl: You seriously want to wait. Are you crazy?

If yes,

High Priest Girl: Watch this.

High Priest Girl: Hey Charlie. Did you know the High Priest has a new girlfriend?

If the player lets the girl distract secretary,

High Priest Girl: You saw it didn’t you. There’s something wrong about the high priest. It’s almost like he wants you men to go into the Heremus and never come back. Don’t worry I’ll keep an eye on your wife while you’re gone. Who knows what his grubby little hands are capable of?

Mother: After my husband died in the Heremus the High Priest took care of me and my children. He even made this garden from his personal water supply.

Loser: Checkmate again. How does she do that? Everytime she baits my queen in an untenable position then with precision humiliates me with amazing tenacity. Cudos sis.

Chess guru: You can’t see the board, but it's there. We're playing in our mind. I can beat anyone in chess. If you come back alive I'll play you also. Beware. I'm more ferocious than a rabid Felnis when it comes to chess.

Baby mama 1: My husband left into the Heremus never to be seen again. The High Priest has helped me out since then.

Baby mama 2: (Baby crying) Don't worry you'll get to see daddy soon.

Baby mama 3: How many secretaries does he need? I was his secretary for a while until I became pregnant.

Baby mama 4: That secretary looks unstable, if you get on her good side for waiting she might give you something nice.

(1)Secretary: The High Priest is busy right now. Can you wait one minute?

(2)Secretary: If these children don’t shut up I’m gonna go crazy.

(3) Secretary: Why does the High Priest need so many secretaries? He only needs me.

If player tries to go upstairs,

(1)Secretary: Wait, you can't go up there.

If player tries again,

(2)Secretary: If you offend the High Priest he might condemn you to be set on fire.

If player tries to go,

(1) Secretary: You can’t go now; the High Priest has summoned you.

Felnis Bathroom Reader vol.1: The Felnis must be basted thoroughly before being put on an open flame. Following this technique ensures that the Felnis meat is tender and soft.

When the player attempts to read the book in the corner,

High Priest: That is the Annals of Time Augustus. It is not necessary for you to burden yourself with such knowledge. Leave these matters in my hands.

**Herdsman Tent**

Herdsman wife:  I never get any sleep with him working all night.  I wish he would just be a full time herdsman, but with the Reditus interference he can’t sleep at night so he works on armor.

Herdsman Son: Why does father always make me milk the yaks.

Wife:  I'll be fine while you are gone. I'll stay busy and before you know it you'll be here again and things will be like they were.

**Rediit Childless Couple**

Elderly Husband: Since we never had children the High Priest trusted us with distributing water to the camp. Elderly Husband: We’ve been saving these medkits for years. We hoped to have a child who’d attempt to revive magic but we never conceived. Here. You make us proud.

After talking Elderly Husband: Ceaser is like a son we never had.  I hope he makes it back safely.

Elderly wife: If only I could have children of my own.

(Sigh).

Desperate man: Finally, I’ve been waiting for water all day.

**Kweh Tent**

Kweh butcher: You want some Kweh meat, freshly slaughtered. It will cost you 1000g for 5 kg. How about it?

Kweh Guard: Only the high priest and a few of his cronies can afford Kweh meat. You didn't hear me say that.

Man Chasing Kweh: This isn’t getting cut from my salary! Come back here!

**Chief Hunter Home**

Chief Hunter: I’m sure you’ll face many drones in the Heremus.  Here are 5 EMP grenades.  Show them how fierce we Rediits are.  Remember drone’s laser weapons are effective against the twisted beasts of the Heremus.

Chief Hunter: Good luck out there Augustus. I need you back. Without your expertise I can only do simple maintenance operations. You're essential for our survival. Maybe that is why you'll survive.

Chief Hunter:  Drones have sophisticated A.I developed by Reditus, but you already know this since you fix my drones.  Although the drones' ability to communicate with us is limited they can still understand our voice commands.  I’m just in awe of the Reditus technology.

Chief Hunter:  That’s one of our top models. I would’ve given you this drone before you left, but it seems you already have one like it.

Drone: State your order?

Augustus: Destroy the camp.

Augustus: Kill the Reditus.

Drone: I will comply after activated.

Caeser: Drone stand down, my father’s only joking.

Drone: Standing down.

Chief Hunter:  That one short circuited awhile back.  You’ll have to fix it when you return Augustus.

Chief Hunter's Wife: You will be missed Augustus. I don't know how we'll survive without you.

**Corydon Deus Prison & Tower**

Wedge: Things are so blurry. I was having fun with the guys drinking some hooch and then the next thing you know I wake up in a Corydon prison with a hangover.  My commander is going to kill me.

Jailbird: I broke the rules of Corydon Deus. I lied before his statue and they put me here. It’s been twenty years.  I'm lucky. Most of them are just put to death.

Temple Guard: This man in the cell beside me cursed the name of Corydon Deus. Such disbelief will not be tolerated among his followers.

Temple Guard: The High Priests have spoken of the days when Corydon Deus's Tower reached to the heavens. Now look at it now. We should be ashamed for allowing it to be this way. But what can we do? We must rebuild this tower even if the Reditus threaten retribution.

Temple Pianist:  Isn’t this music great.  It gets you in the mood for Corydon Deus worship.

Temple Guard:  We have nothing, but everything.  This statue is our life while we live in death.  We gaze upon it to remind ourselves of the beauty of Corydon Deus while being surrounded by the ugliness of death.

Temple Guard:  Be still and listen to this melody.  Let it put your soul at peace.

Temple Guard: The first walker is out of step. We will have to beat him later.

Temple Guard:  Feel the might of Corydon Deus.  Although he is not here now, imagine the day he will come.  There will be such a great display of power.  Our enemies will surely cower before him.

Epitaph inside Corydon Deus’s temple:

In the beginning the Magi created Corydon Deus.  They knew he would be divine.  They gave him the ability to harness the power of the gods.  He was divine.

He purified the world.  Exalting his own glory he built a tower that reached to the heavens.

He is holy.  His powers no man possessed; therefore, his godhead was cemented in the heavens.  Out of jealousy, the Reditus rebelled against his dominion and tried to steal his power to judge over the nations.  In his mercy he hid his face from the Reditus and withdrew his power from the world he had created.

He was blessed.  He did not want his power to be corrupted by the Reditus.  He did not want to destroy them.  He stored his power away till the appointed time when he will return and redeem his chosen people from the yoke of the Reditus.

Oh Corydon Deus, hallowed be thy name.

Wedge: Things are so blurry. I was having fun with the guys drinking some hooch and then the next thing you know I wake up in a Corydon Deus prison with a hangover. My commander is going to kill me.

If the player talk to the Reditus bandit after the player defeats Macy,

Macy's Boyfriend: What happened to Macy? Is she ok?

If the player talks to the prison guard after the quest has started,

Guard: When will my shift end?

**Ransom Quest**

Bandit: Wait till the army finds out I'm here. You're all done for!

Guard: Will you shut up Reditus maggot!

Bandit: Why don't you try to make me!

Guard: Alright! That's it! I've had it!

Guard: Hey Augustus! We've got a Reditus soldier over there who was caught wandering in the Heremus drunk near our checkpoint. We picked him up and put him in here. You're going out in the Heremus anyways.

Why don't you take this ransom letter over to the Reditus checkpoint towards Zen. We'll give you a 10% cut of whatever they give you for him. We'd like 200G., but let's see if you can get more.

After saying yes,

Guard: Alright honey, let's make some money. Here take this letter.

Augustus turns to Caeser,

Augustus: Let's go see if we can earn some money. What do you say?

Ceaser: Sure thing Father. We need some money out there. Who knows what we will face.

If the player says no,

Guard: Come back if you wanna make some quick G.

Guard after quest begins,

Temple Guard:

If the player talks to the Reditus bandit after he’s been beat,

Bandit: ugh....I'll get my revenge.

Reditus Checkpoint Dialogue

If the player approaches the Reditus checkpoint before initiating “Ransom Quest.”

Reditus Hover Jet: Turn back now Corydon Deus scum! This is no place for you!

During Bargaining,

Reditus Hover Jet:  Halt! Don’t come any closer.  What do you want Rediit scum?

Augustus:  We mean you know harm. We only came to deliver a message.

Reditus Hover Jet:  You may proceed. We’re watching you.  Any funny business and you’re dead.

Reditus Commander: State your business.

Augustus: We found something you may want wandering in the Heremus. Here’s a note stating its contents.

Reditus Commander: All right, give me the note, but do it nice and slow. I’m watching you.

(Augustus gives the ransom note to the guard)

Reditus Commander: You guys won’t believe this, It’s Wedge.  He really screwed up big time.

Reditus Soldier: Wedge got so drunk he was screaming and howling like a rabid Felnis.

Reditus Commander.: Wedge, you stupid dumb ass. I thought he went AWOL, this is even worse.  It’s not just his fault.  All you men have gotten lazy.  All the men who drank with him are gonna do Felnis squats in the Heremus. You hear that you worthless turds! (He turns to his men.) So give him back so I can lay into him.

Augustus: Whoa! It’s gonna cost you. He was breaking our rules on our land.

Reditus Commander: What’s keeping us from just wiping your camp from the face of Gaia? You people live because of our mercy. It is your punishment that you live in Heremus anyways for following that worthless god of yours. I guess I can throw a couple table scraps to some dogs. How much?

300: Reditus Commander: Are you kidding me? I can buy a whore in Zen and Felnis’s tail to go with that kind of money. I’ll only give you 200 G. Take it or leave it. That drunken Scalawag can spend the rest of his days in a Corydon Deus prison for all I care. He’s not gonna ruin my leave pay.

When no,

Commander: Ohhh...Rediit scum likes to bargain. You should have taken what I was offering while I was feeling generous. 150 G.

When Augustus: You can give more than that. I have two starving children to feed.,

Commander:  1.G Consider it a token payment for not killing you.

Commander: Now bring him back now or face our fierce retribution on the entire Rediit camp. It is by our mercy we even allow you worthless people to live in the Heremus.

250: Reditus Commander: You drive a hard bargain. Let me think. Hmmmm….. All right you got a deal. Now bring that douchebag here. He’s going to have to pay me back big time.

200: Reditus Commander: All right! You got a deal. I never knew Rediits could be so cheap when it comes to paying for life.

Commander: Now hurry back will you. I can’t wait to lay into that worthless shit bag.

Augustus: What about payment?

Commander: I’ll give you half now and half later all right. Okay?

Augustus: Deal. I’ll be back as soon as possible with your lovely little Wedge.

Temple Guard after bargaining too much,

Temple Guard: They agreed to give you 1G! And they threatened to attack us if we didn't deliver him. Way to go Augustus. We are at the mercy of the Reditus. If they were willing to give you something just take it. Hey Wedge it’s your lucky day. You're outta here. (Opens Wedge’s jail cell)

Temple Guard after getting some money,

Temple Guard: They agreed to pay you something, this is our lucky day.  Just give me my half after you deliver him. Hey Wedge it’s your lucky day. You're outta here. (Opens Wedge’s jail cell)

Temple Guard waiting for you to deliver wedge,

Temple Guard: Show me the money baby. Deliver the package and let’s party tonight!

Temple Guard after quest finished,

Temple Guard: I heard they attacked you. Take the money for your troubles. You're going to need it more than me.

After the bargaining with Reditus is finished,

Reditus Guard: Where's Wedge? Please don't come without Wedge. We'd hate to destroy all you worthless scum without him.

After returning Wedge,

Reditus Guard: Commander, the Rediit scum have wedge. Isn't he a sight for sore eyes?

Commander: Wedge, get over here you worthless shitbag.

Commander: Well a deal is a deal. The problem is we have a reputation to uphold and I can't make a precedent of actually dealing with Rediit scum. We tell you people what to do and you listen. Hey boys, let's teach these Reditt scum a lesson or two about trying to extort money out of Reditus.

Commander: This is going to be fun.

If defeated,

Commander: Reinforcements!

If you run,

Reditus Soldiers: Look at’em run boys.  Wooooohoooo!

Augustus: I think the coast is clear.

Ceaser: Let's get out of here Father. Those Scourges are unbeatable! No weapon on Gaia can defeat them.

Augustus: No weapon can defeat them, but with magic; all things are possible!

If you lose,

Commander:   You know we were going to let you run for our entertainment, but we saw you had some fight in ya so I changed my mind. We'll take whatever we gave you and then some. Now run back to your Corydon Deus statue and tell him how your ass got handed to you by a bunch of Reditus. Now scamper on now or I might not let you live at all.

If player comes back after Wedge delivered,

Returner Hover Jet: Don't come back here boys unless you want another whoopin.

**Pimp Out My Droid Side Quest**

Tech Enthusiast: I found this scrap mech in the Heremus and painted it red. If only I could get it working again. If you find parts for it in the Heremus could you use the parts to repair it?

If yes, Great! I hope you will survive!

If no, (Sigh).......I'll just continue to stare at it and dream of the day I get to ride into glory on top of a Reditus mech.

If the player talks to him after the quest is started.

Tech Enthusiast: Did you find all the parts? I can’t wait to test drive my restored Reditus machine of death. I wonder though, if I restore it, will it turn on me?

Caeser and Augustus find a damaged Mech in the Heremus,

Caeser: Hey father, this is a rundown Reditus mech. We can use it for spare parts when we get back to camp.

**Theresa’s Tent**

Theresa:  You’re not going to take me with you?

Theresa: Hey, quit laughing at me! I can fight drones just like you and your father. I could probably do it better than you.

Ceaser: Okay, okay, I believe you, but you know men are the only ones allowed deep in Heremus?

Theresa: Yes, I know the rules. The life of the camp rests inside the heart of a woman. And men never come back. You better not die. I don’t want to make babies for some dirty hunter.

Caeser: No, I’m coming back, stay away from those dirty hunters. I swear to Corydon if one of those dark root chewing, yak sucking…….

Theresa:  Shhhh……….I will wait for you.

Caeser:  I want you to have this. I will stay alive for you. Caeser hands her a Heremus dandelion.

Theresa: The sign of our engagement is confirmed then. I wish we had more time together.

Caeser:  I know, but how much longer will we survive in these horrible conditions. My father is right to a certain degree, something must be done, but I still do not know. Only the Heremus knows whose wind and sand veil its secrets. I can’t imagine our children living like this.

Theresa: Yes, maybe you will find the answers we’ve all been waiting for, but you must be strong if you are going to come back alive. It would be nice to raise our children in a better world. Whatever you do, don't give up. Keep that dream alive in your heart and I will wait for you no matter what anyone says.

Caeser:  And will not give up no matter how hard things get.  If I die, I will die with you, not in the Heremus.

Theresa's Father: This is suicide Augustus. You're going to kill your son and break my daughter’s heart too. I will withhold her hand from marriage for a little while. If you’re not back within a month I may begin searching for a new suitor.

Theresa: Don't say such things father. He will come back.

Augustus: If we are not back in a month, begin searching.

Caeser: But father we're in love.

After cutscene,

Theresa: You're brave for trying this, but what about our future? What if you die? I shouldn't be thinking about these things. Please go. I'm going to cry.

Theresa's Father: Good luck Augustus.

Theresa's mother: Take care of yourself Caeser, may the winds of the Heremus guide you. It will be nice having you as a son-in-law. I hope you come back and make that happen.

**Side Quest Girl by the well**

Young Girl:  What if the water runs out?  What will we do?  I heard the Reditus have no want of water, food, and wine flows freely as a river.  Is this true?  Choose yes or no.

If no, Young girl:  I don’t believe you.  If we are liars despite our poverty; are we not worse than the Reditus who oppress us?  I will go myself to find the truth.  We are done here Augustus.  Good day.

If yes, Young girl:  If that is the case then Corydon Deus must be testing our faith.  Even if we run out of water I would rather suffer here with my brothers and sisters.  Corydon Deus wants us to trust him during hard times and the good.  Thank you for your honesty Augustus.  Here take this as a token of appreciation for your good spirit.  (Augustus receives Child’s relic)

If you talk to the girl again.

If truth, Girl: May Corydon Deus watch over you on your journey.

If Lie, Girl: Don’t talk to me.  I don’t speak to ugly faced liars.  Go away, I’ll find the truth out for myself.

**High Priest Quest**

If caught chasing girl,

High Priest: (Cough) (Cough). Ahhh Augustus. Thanks ummm.....for stopping by. Yes, I told you to stop by before you left. I have a request.  Since you are going deep into the Heremus, there are a group of Reditus bandits who have been bothering our hunting parties. If you could, please try to find their hideout and "reason" with them if you can in order to stop their harmful activities. You will be rewarded of course.

If not caught chasing girl,

High Priest: Hello Augustus thanks for coming. Returner bandits have been bothering our hunting parties. If you could, please try to find their hideout and reason with them if you can in order to stop their harmful activities. You will be rewarded of course.

If Augustus says “No, I think this would distract me from my ultimate goal which is the revival of magic.”

1. High Priest: Let me put it bluntly, I will not allow our hunters to let you deeper into the Heremus if you do not perform this task. If you scratch my back, I’ll scratch yours. Come and talk to me if you change your mind.

If Augustus says “Yes, it would be a great honor to bear witness to the greatness of Corydon Deus to the Reditus.”

1. High Priest: Great to hear, now let’s get down to business. Do you have any questions?

Possible Questions,

1. Augustus: What do they want with our hunting parties?
2. High priest: When they attack us they take nothing from us, they seem to be attacking us out of spite and hatred otherwise they would loot us.

1. Augustus: What if they’re not willing to listen to reason?
2. High Priest: You know you must do Augustus. The infidels must know the wrath of Corydon Deus.

(3) Augustus: What of their combat abilities? What are they capable of?

(4) High Priest: They are very capable hand to hand fighters. Only a few of them carry rifles.

1. High Priest: Any more questions, Augustus?
2. Augustus: Yes or No

After accepting the high priest’s mission,

1. High Priest:  As a high priest of Corydon Deus I’m not allowed to leave the camp into the Heremus so there is little practical advice I can offer you on how to survive out there.  I know this though; that Corydon Deus is watching over us and will guide your hand to himself.  There is nothing to fear out there; except Corydon Deus.

**High Priest after defeating bandits,**

High Priest: So you defeated the bandit leader huh? You’re leaving behind a legacy that will always be remembered.

Caeser: You speak as if we won’t return.

High Priest: Well, I didn’t mean it like that, I digress, let me show you your great reward.

High priest leads them to his back room and shows them his toilet.

High Priest: As you know this is the only other toilet in the entire camp and it is yours to freely use. We are truly grateful for you and what you’ve done before leaving us. Augustus, tell your wife she can use my toilet anytime while you are gone. Corydon Deus doesn’t want us to relieve ourselves freely anywhere, but wants our camp clean. Godliness is next to cleanliness, right?

Augustus: Thank you high priest, your patronage to me and my family is truly appreciated.

High Priest: Good luck Augustus, your wife will be taken care of while you’re gone.

The high priest goes, Caeser takes his father aside.

Caeser:  Father, I got a bad feeling about this. I think you should tell mom to stay away from this guy if you know what I’m saying.

Augustus: Don’t say such a thing Caeser. The High Priest can do no wrong. He is the chose leader by Corydon Deus for our people.

**Seer Side Quest & Torture Floor**

Seer: Come in Augustus, your presence is required.

Augustus: How did you know I was outside?

Seer:  I’ve seen you coming for a long, long, time Augustus.  The world will shake, cities will fall, and the world as we know it will come to an end.  Yes, I’ve seen you, Augustus.

Augustus:  What will happen when I go deep into the Heremus?  Will I come back?

Seer:  You will become a god and rule the world yet the hand closest to you will be your undoing.

Augustus:  How can you say such things, Seer?    Everyone knows that Corydon Deus is our god!  I could never replace him, never.  If the priests found out you are saying such things they might kill you.  How is this possible?

Seer:  That I do not know, yet know that it is so.

Augustus:  You say many strange things, Seer.  I will consider these things and let them weigh upon my heart.

Seer: Caeser, unbearable loss will bring you to the point of no return. Out of this pain seeds of redemption will blossom on Gaia. You are our hope and future. But your eyes must be open first to see the truth. After the destruction of our world I bid you to return here Caeser, but first you must cleanse your tent of that which claims it has its own. Then I will give you the right to obtain that which lies in the chest in the corner.

Seer:  Corydon Deus willing we will see each other again.  May Corydon Deus bless you.

Seer (If player talks again.): Do not tarry. The destruction of the world cannot wait. Let the purification begin.

(If the player checks the chest, receives Excalibur) Seer: Caeser, do you normally go rummaging through people’s belongings?  This isn’t a Dragon Quest game.  It’s the real world.  Put that back!  Come back to me after the world has been destroyed and we will see if you are worthy.

Seer:  You open that chest one more time and I'll call the temple guards. I swear to Corydon Deus.

Seer: I have a mechanism on that chest so that whenever you open that chest without my permission it will close again.

Guard: These are Reditus whom we’ve captured. These fools thought the Heremus was for sightseeing. We give them a taste of what it’s like to live here.

Tortured Man: I'll pay you anything just let me go.

**Heremus Rose Side Quest**

Theresa:  Caeser! Wait! Don’t leave yet!

(Caeser turns around)

Theresa: Caeser, my love, don’t you think a Heremus Dandelion is a little….trite, I mean you are going to the most dangerous place in the world and I was thinking you could pick a Heremus Rose. I mean, how cool would that be! How many girls in the camp get a Heremus Rose as a pledge for marriage? All the other girls would be so jealous!

Caeser: Are you serious? You do know that nobody returns when they go where I’m going.

Theresa: I had a dream last night and you returned. During our wedding ceremony our entire camp was getting bombed; can you believe it?

Caeser:  Hmmm……….

If Yes, it sounds crazy, while risking my life I’ll look for a Heremus Rose for you. Please take care of my mother while I’m gone.

Theresa: I will, of course.  Take care my love.

If Caeser: No, I can’t take a risk like that. I can’t risk my father’s life for a stupid rose. I think the Heremus Dandelion is sufficient.

Theresa:  What an asshole! (She pouts and runs away)

Caeser (As she’s almost gone) We’re still getting married right?

Theresa:  Who am I going to marry in this crappy tent village?  A smelly ass herdsman with his yaks?  I’d rather marry a Reditus.  She walks away.

Caeser:  Ummm….watch over my mother.

Augustus:  Eh, women.  Maybe you should pick that rose.

Caeser:  Yeah, maybe.

Augustus: Caeser, do not forget your love. Her rose is up north if you wish to pursue it. I think you should.

The rose is located in the southern part of the Heremus in an oasis.  If the player attempts to pick the rose a giant boar with massive tusks attempts to attack the player.  At this moment the player enters into a battle with the giant boar and has two choices:  either fight the giant boar or run away.  If the player chooses to fight the boar they will die.  If they run away during the battle the character on the map screen will hide from the boar in the bushes nearby.  The boar will snort looking left and looking right until it walks away.

If the player attempts to pick the rose again the whole process will begin again.  If Augustus and his party attempt again to take the rose, the party will again hide in the bush, but this time Augustus will say, “I wish there was some way to mask our scent so that we can quietly pick the rose without the boar catching our scent.”  At this moment the player should use the boar fecal matter. When this happens Caeser will spread the boar shit over his entire body and will then be able to pick the rose.  The giant boar, Boremaug, is an optional boss later on.

After receiving the rose,

Caeser: Finally, Theresa's Heremus Rose. I can't believe how beautiful it is. I'll keep it pressed in my journal to preserve it.

Caeser: Now how to clean this smell off of us?

Augustus: I think I'm going to vomit.

**The Heremus (Very subject to change)**

**Sandstorm Begins Again**

Caeser: Ugh....the sandstorms in this place. It’s unbearable.

Augustus: Once we revive Corydon Deus this storm will spread across the entire continent. The Reditus will know what we have felt our entire lives.

**Where They Burn Blasphemers**

(The party approaches a charred body surrounded by stone.)

Augustus: This is where they burn blasphemers.

Caeser: Father, you don’t think that’s a little extreme?

Augustus: It must be done to keep order in camp. There must be repercussions for offending Corydon Deus.

Caeser: Offending Corydon Deus or offending the high priest?

Augustus: One and the same. Since Corydon Deus is not here the high priest stands in his place. He has the Annals of Time so he knows what is in the interest of Corydon Deus. He must not be questioned. I’ve known the high priest from my youth and he has always kept order. He has helped many grieving widows who have lost husbands to the Deepest parts of the Heremus.

Caeser (Whispers): “Helped.”

Augustus: What was that?

Caeser: Nothing father. You're right, the high priest does keep order in our camp. Without him there would be absolute chaos.

Augustus: If we can revive Corydon Deus then there will be no need for the high priest.

Caeser: That would be nice, let’s continue, it’s hot out here.

**Hunters Camping**

Hunter: I saw some bandits run into the forest after they attacked us. I chased after them but they disappeared.  I wonder where they could have gone.....

Hunter: To the west is Zen, but is blocked by a Reditus checkpoint. South is Mt. Corydon Deus. East goes deeper into the Heremus.

Hunter: I don't trust those Reditus. Sometimes they attack us for no reason. Watch yourself in this weather, Augustus. Reditus drones have been known to ambush us.

**Mount Corydon Deus**

Caeser: When you come up here does Corydon Deus speak to you?

Augustus: Corydon Deus has a different way of speaking. His voice is in the wind if you listen carefully. It leads and guides the way. Where the wind is, there his voice is also.

Caeser: Wow. I wish I could have the faith you have, Father.

Augustus: I kept some medkits around here just in case. I forgot where I put them. It was so long ago. Let us search for them.

**Bandit Cave**

Augustus and Caeser enter Reditus bandit cave,

Caeser: Father, did you hear that? It sounded like a pressure switch when we stepped here. Maybe there is a way to open a path.

Caeser: It seems that there is another switch here too. If we step on both switches at the same time a way may open.

Augustus: Good idea son. Let's try it.

Augustus: Let's kill some infidels.

Caeser: Slow down Father. Maybe we can reason with them. Get them to stop attacking our hunters.

Augustus: Reason? There is no reasoning with the Reditus. But alas we will try, but if they cannot be reasoned with they will get a bullet in the head.

Voice: Help Me!

Caeser: It sounds like someone needs help. Let's hurry.

Augustus: Let's be careful. It could be a trap.

Augustus and Caeser see three bandits,

Augustus: Hey! We need to talk to your boss!

A long uneasy silence passes.

Caeser: Hello, we need to speak to your boss?

Bandit 2: Did you hear something?

Bandit 1: I think this Rediit scum wants to talk to our boss.

Bandit 2: Yeah he wants to talk to boss because he’s a big shot, a superstar, get a load of this guy.

Bandit 1: He comes in our cave and he says, “I want to talk to your boss.” It’s like he doesn’t realize who he is and the precarious situation he’s in. Maybe those Rediit skeletons dangling from those trees didn’t send a clear enough message.

Bandit 2: Definitely not clear enough. We’re gonna have to get to the level of Relm to paint a clear enough picture for these silly buffoons.

Bandit 1: No you can’t talk to our boss because soon you’re going to be D-E-A-D. Dead.

Augustus and Caeser reach a long gap,

Augustus: This is one long gap..Airloft. Do you think you can carry us across?

Airloft: Affirmative. Your weight does not exceed my carrying capacity.

Augustus: Alright. I’ll go first.

Augustus: You can do it Caeser! Just don't look down and put your faith in Corydon Deus!

Caeser: Don't forget a little faith in Airloft too!

Caeser flies over the gap,

Caeser: For a moment there I felt my grip slipping. But then something pushed me from below.

Augustus: It was the power of Corydon Deus.

Airloft: Energy Wall Directive deactivated.

Caeser: Hmmmm.......

Augustus: You coming......

Help Me! Is someone there!

Augustus: Sounds like we're getting closer.

Augustus and Caeser find a naked bandit changing in a room,

Gregorios: Excuse me! I'm changing in here! Why are you guys wearing those funny outfits anyways? Pretending to be Rediits? Get out!

Augustus: Sorry!

Augustus and Caeser tried to enter the room again,

Gregorios: Awkward! You saw me naked and now you want to talk again. Come back later and maybe things will be a little less awkward.

Voice: Help me please!!!

Caeser: That voice is coming from inside that room. Let's hurry.

Augustus: I have a bad feeling about this.

Augustus and Caeser enter the final room of the cave and find a girl lying below a spotlight,

Mystery Girl: How was my performance? Were you convinced? Did you actually believe I was a damsel in distress who needed rescue from these depraved bandits? Say hello to my boys. (Lights come on showing more bandits.)

Mystery Girl: Did you cultists come here to extol the virtues of following Corydon Deus? To show me the severity of moral turpitude I've descended from attacking your hunters? I don’t do it for the loot, but because you people sicken me. I don't know why my people let you live after what your god did. I don’t think living in the Heremus is punishment enough for you people. Let me tell you a story of a small girl living happily with her parents. Until your so-called “god” decided to lift a continent into the sky and rain down hell upon Gaia. My parents died in your so-called purification. Ever since that day I have lived on the streets. I stole, prostituted myself, and did whatever it took so that one day I would have my revenge. I joined the Reditus Army, and along with this brave band of soldiers, we chose to abandon our post and seek revenge for all the losses we suffered 20 years ago.

Augustus: You're the very essence of why he did what he did.

Caeser: Actually we didn't come here to have this conversation. We just want you to stop...

Augustus: Or get a bullet in your head....

Caeser: That's not what I wanted to say, o'well, will you stop or not? I’m sorry for your losses, but that was twenty years ago and some of the people that you killed have nothing to do with your losses. I was born in the camp and I’ve known nothing but the harsh winds of the Heremus since I was a child…..

Mystery Girl: But your god created this paradise you live in now……

Augustus: That’s enough!

Mystery Girl: What’s your name? I like you.

Caeser: Caeser....

Mystery Girl: Caeser...let me think for a second.

Mystery Girl: My answer is no. I won't stop. Since I like you Caeser, you've been polite. I won't kill you after I get done killing your Father. Get'em boys.

Mystery Girl: My name is Macy. It's the last name you will remember before you die.

Augustus and Caeser defeat Macy,

Macy: Please don't kill me. I've done wrong. Have mercy. I'll go back home and leave you people alone.

Augustus: There is no mercy for the enemies of Corydon Deus. Prepare to receive your just punishment.

Caeser moves in front of his father.

Caeser: Wait Father, she might be able to help us.

Augustus: Okay, let’s give her a chance, but I still think she deserves a bullet in the head.

Caeser: Can you tell us about the robot which wanders the Heremus? Why did the Reditus put it there?

Macy: It seems to be something important that cannot be trusted with humans. That is why there are so many robots guarding the Heremus and not Reditus. There are rumors that deep within the ruins of Vehere my people are hiding something. But none of us are allowed to go near that place to confirm the rumor.

Caeser: Or something potentially dangerous to humans period. Do you know any more information you can tell us?

Macy: All I know is that my people are divided and fighting against each other. If you wish to find out what horrors lie for you in the Heremus, now is the best time.

Caeser: You may go now, but I never want to see your face here again.

Augustus: Corydon Deus ordains that we kill her, but I understand your desire to let her go. I was like you when I was younger until the injustices brought upon us by the Reditus hardened my heart towards them.

Caeser: Maybe they can change…………

Gregorios: I heard you defeated Macy. Which is okay with me. She was stealing all the attention from the boys. I was always jealous of her, but it looks like I don’t have to be jealous anymore. Lucky me! Since you did me a favor I’ll show you how to get out of here. Follow me.

Gregorios: Well come on. I don't have forever. I have a date in an hour.

Gregorios: Augustus, you look like a strong man with that burly beard. Why don’t you be a sweetie and push that box for me? You’re such a gentleman.

Gregorios: If you know any single Rediits send them my way. I was always a sucker for a man of the cloth. Come back later I have big plans for this place.

If you visit bar after leaving,

Gregorios: How do you want your martini? Shaken or stirred. I was thinking of turning this place into a bar. I was thinking of a name. What do you think is better? Drunken Moogle or Branded Chocobo?

When Drunken Felnis,

Drunken Felnis, I like the sound of that too. You know,  my dream is to turn this place into a casino and monster arena. Instead of robbing the Kefkites we'll capture monsters from the Wasteland and abroad and pit them together in a deathmatch. Sounds cool, huh? I just wonder if it's legal in this state. Come back after some time and I'll make my dream a reality.

When Branded Kweh,

Branded Kweh. “same as other”

**Deep Heremus**

**In First Campsite**

The sandstorm is too great so Augustus and Caeser take refuge in a cave.

Ceaser: This sand storm is getting too much. I can’t go on anymore.

Augustus: Just a little while longer. I heard of a cave hunters use to take shelter in. It should be near here. Come on, get up, you can do it by the power of Corydon Deus.

Caeser: Ok, ok I’m getting up.

Augustus: Here take my hand.

Augustus: We made it. Let's go inside and take shelter.

Caeser: To think, you were going to try this alone.

Airloft: No life signs detected. This cave is safe.

Augustus: Ok, we're going to need a fire. It’s going to get cold tonight.

Ceaser: Father, don't make me go out there again.

Augustus: I also can't bear to go out there again. Airloft...will you go and collect firewood?

Airloft:  My scanners indicate several areas with dead trees. I should be able to obtain the necessary fuel. I will have to engage in walk mode to succeed in my task. Walk mode engaged.

Augustus: We need seven pieces to start a good fire. I don't want small pieces.

If Airloft talks to Augustus,

Do you have the Fire Wood Airloft?

If yes,

Excellent! Now let's make a fire.

If no,

Augustus: Is something wrong with your AI Airloft? I'm getting cold. Hurry up.

If Airloft talks to Caeser,

Ceaser: What was I thinking? I can't even move, I'm so tired.

**Around the Campfire**

Augustus: Airloft...can you get this started?

Airloft: Affirmative, activating ignition specialties.

Caeser:  I’m just following you blindly right now.  You heard what Macy said. There could be grave danger waiting for us in the ruins of Vehere. You must have some sort of plan.  Even if we do survive the Heremus, what do we do when we reach the ruins of Vehere?

Augustus:  As you know, our legend has it that there was a Magicius Facility located deep inside Vehere.  In that facility Corydon Deus received the might of the gods.

The player is then presented with a flashback. The camera pans across a bunch of Fabricius who are stuck in suspension chambers while their powers are being drained. A bunch of scientists are also experimenting on them. We then see Corydon Deus absorbing electricity.

Corydon Deus: Oh! I can feel this power surge through my body. I feel as if I’m as powerful as a god. No wait, I am a God.

Cid: Sir, you should take it easy for a while, we still don’t know the effects of Magicius absorbed from Fabricius. It may cause mental instability for some time.

Corydon Deus: Rubbish! I feel like I can see through a thousand time zones. My mind feels more acute than it has ever been.

Corydon Deus: Ignis!

(Casts fire spell.)

Augustus: If my theory is correct, the Magicius extracted from Fabricius given to Corydon Deus might still be left in small quantities which might be enough to instill within us magical powers.  If this is the case then Corydon Deus might return.

Augustus: I studied the notes of your grandfather Cid which revealed to me the secrets of Magicius machinery.  My father was chief engineer to Corydon Deus while Corydon Deus was still human.  He was captured by the Reditus shortly before Corydon Deus became a god. The Reditus tortured my father to try to find out the secret of Magicia extraction.

Augustus: During the great shaking your grandfather was able to escape from his cell and steal a Reditus dropship. In awe of the might of Corydon Deus he decided to build a great tower in dedication to Corydon Deus. That tradition we follow till present day. Before your grandfather passed away he gave me his notes which will help us once we reach the ruins of Vehere.

Caeser:  Since when did you learn how to operate Magicius Machinery? You continue to amaze me father.  I shouldn’t have doubted you.  Maybe we will succeed where others have failed.

Augustus:  Yes, if Corydon Deus returns he will surely know what to do.

Caeser:  One more question, father.  Why didn’t the Reditus destroy what was left of the Magicius Facility?  Or do they know what you know?

Augustus:  These are legitimate concerns, son.  We must beware.  Maybe they have been trying to do the same thing we are attempting, but without success.  We must tread carefully once inside the ruins.

**Finding The Rose**

Caeser: I’ve never seen so much water in my entire life.

Augustus: I didn’t think it was possible. Our wells are almost dry. We will tell the others once we reach. I think this is the Rose you’re looking for.

Caeser: Yes, this is a Heremus Rose. Many Rediit have doubted such a plant actually exists here in such a barren wasteland, but here it is. I’ll pick it and press it within my journal. Wait, what is that noise?

Augustus:  Hurry, something is coming, we must hide. (They hide)

Boarmaug quickly rushes towards the Rose looking left and right and then walks away

Caeser: I’m scared to try again. If the boar comes back it could be the end of us. If only there was some way to hide our scent.

Augustus: Yes, we must have something we can use to hide our scent.

If you try again without shit,

Caeser: Not doing that again! He can smell us coming from a mile away!

If you try again with shit,

Augustus: May Corydon Deus have mercy on you, you smell worse than a Reditus ass.

Caeser: If I die covered in pig shit I hope this smell haunts you the rest of your days.

Boarmaug is a huge boar compared to the other boars they have fought in the game.  It has huge tusks which it uses to gore the entire party which causes bleeding. Boremaug hides behind the bushes when it gores.  The bushes located on the battle screen must be set on fire using Airloft’s plasma shot or any other fire attack in order to blind the boar and negate his Gore attack.  .

**Southern Ruins**

Augustus: Why are Rediits wandering the Heremus? Something's not right. We should avoid them and try not to be seen. They may mean harm to us.

Caeser: You're right father. See the look in their eyes. They are walking as if they are under someone else's control.

Caeser: Hey father, if you can find something nice in these ruins without being seen I'll give you something that I found in the cave we took shelter in. If you get seen, you give me something nice. Is it a bet?

If yes,

Caeser: All right, let's see what you got.

If no,

Caeser: Eh, you're no fun.

Caeser: Wow! A new rifle. This is what I'm talking about.

If running from a battle,

Augustus: Wow! That was close!

Caeser: Father, we need to be more careful.

After being seen and reaching to the end,

Caeser: You owe me a full round of Kumis when we get home.

Augustus: I'd be more than happy.

**Quicksand**

Augustus: We must watch our footsteps. If we begin to sink too fast then we must correct our course.

Caeser: Father I think we should first send Airloft to find a way he’s able to navigate the quicksand. He can mark the path with waypoint beacons.

(1)Augustus: That’s a great idea.

(Airloft activates walk mode.)

Or

(2)Augustus: We don’t have time. Each moment that passes things become more desperate in camp. Let’s press forward.

Augustus: It's done. You can do it Airloft.

Airloft: To activate my stealth mode push enter on the keyboard or x if you're using a joypad.

Caeser: How can we get through there?

Augustus: Are the markers done Airloft?

Augustus: I've never seen so much sand in my entire life. It seems as if this will stretch out forever into the horizon. One can but examine oneself when faced with such limitless void. I just realized I'm talking to a robot.

Augustus: Airloft, is conversation written in your AI? If it's not, then I suggest you hurry up and find the way.

Augustus: Sigh... Let's try to do this.

**Battle of the Heremus**

Caeser: I get this eerily feeling we are being watched.

Augustus: Me too.

Caeser: Again, I feel like we're being watched. This time I'm getting an ominous feeling of an evil presence.

When the player travels deeper into the Heremus the player enters an autorun sequence where the party is attacked by swarms of drones.

Caeser: Reditus drones.

Augustus: It's an ambush. Get down.

Caeser: I'm hit

Augustus: Don't worry. I'll get you to safety. Airloft deploy your energy wall to hold them off. I need to drag him to safety.

Augustus drags Caeser to safety.

Augustus: I guess this is it Caeser. I should of listened to your mother. Corydon Deus I'm a fool.

Caeser: Don't blame yourself Father. You listened to your heart. You're a brave man. All hope is not lost yet. Run from here. Leave me to die....

Augustus: We will die together son.

The group of Felnis can be heard shouting in the background.

Augustus: What was that?

Caeser: Sounded like a Felnis. A bunch of Felniss.

(Felnis lasers shoot down the drones.)

Augustus: The drones are gone.

The player is now introduced to Neo V.

Neo V introduction: Neo V and his people used to live in harmony with the Reditus in Ehsran. Over time the Reditus developed a taste for Felnis. Neo V and the last few remaining Felniss fled to the Heremus knowing that they would be safe from Reditus hunters, but live at the mercy of the Heremus. Neo V and his ragtag band of Felniss sympathize with the Rediits because they also know what it is to live as outcasts.

Augustus: Thank you so much for helping us. My boy is wounded. He needs help immediately.

Neo V: Po! Po!

Augustus: Does that mean we're going now??

Suddenly the Felnis group is alerted by the presence of an army.

Heremus A.I.: Directive 3: Capture incapacitated subject for neural implantation. Directive 4: Incapacitate other subjects for neural implantation.

Augustus: So, the legends are true. For years people spoke of a robot that controlled the beasts and drones of the Heremus, but no one ever made it back alive to confirm the legend. How many Rediits are under its control also? Today it's tyranny ends. NO LONGER WILL YOU SUBJUGATE MY PEOPLE!

Augustus: Will you join this battle and help me destroy this abomination?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus while fighting comes across two humans who have been implanted.

Implanted Human: Come and join us. Ignorance is bliss when you are part of the Nexus.

Implanted Rediit: Corydon Deus does not exist. Only the Nexus exists and we are to do its bidding.

A group of Heremus Felniss joins in the battle to try to save the party.  A multiparty battle ensues with 3 groups attempting to defend Caeser from the onslaught.  If the groups of enemies reaches wounded Caeser then the battle is lost.  This battle in design will be reminiscent of FF6 group battles).

The enemies you will fight will be effective mixtures of all enemies the player has previously fought.  After the smaller groups of enemies are defeated there remains a boss for you to fight.

**Neural Master**

Neural Master guards the Heremus AI. Neural Master is able to immediately revive the shadow assassins who are guarding him. The only way he can be defeated is by knocking back his assassins to the rear row so that you are able to attack him. He attacks with a wind kick which is a powerful kick that attacks your entire party.

After boss guardian is defeated,

Heremus A.I.:Directive 5: Maintain functionality to further implement neural implement protocol, withdrawing to safety sector 1.

**Heremus A.I. Boss (use for later area)**

Heremus A.I. is a mysterious robot covered in a cloak that is controlling Heremus creatures with neural implants. He uses this ability called “Neural Summon” to summon monsters you have fought previously in the Heremus.  When his health reaches a halfway point he bears his claws which extend from his hand looking very similar to the blades of Wolverine.

The boss is very powerful.  You will have to sacrifice two out of the 3 parties in order to defeat him.  If Augustus attacks with shock arrows you will be able to disable the A.I’s ability to use “Neural Summon.”  While shocked the Heremus A.I. become more defensive.

Upper text during battle while shocked:  Neural implant connection interrupted.  Defensive mode enabled.

If the player attacks they will be met with a flurry of counterattacks.  At this point Augustus' group should flee.  The group containing Airloft should attack.  Airloft should activate the “Energy Wall.” Heremus A.I. will still be in defensive mode one battle after the fact.

**Dream Sequence**

The 1st part of Caeser’s dream shows the world being destroyed as it was in the past when the world of order was 1st destroyed. The 2nd part of the dream shows Corydon Deus multiplying and laughing as he slowly expands himself into different beings just like himself. The 3rd part of his dream, Caeser fights Corydon Deus for the soul of his father.

Caeser: Stay away from him! I can see you’re an evil man and we’ll have no part of you.

Caeser rushes at his father to save him from the clutches of Corydon Deus but is stopped by Corydon Deus before he can reach his father. Corydon Deus unleashes his wicked laugh as he pushes Caeser away with his power.

Augustus: What is done is done. I am he and he is me. We are one. You cannot sunder what the Corydon Deus have brought together.

Caeser: Ugh............You won't get away with this. I will save my father. I swear upon my Great Grandfather Cid.  I will have my vengeance.

Caeser suddenly wakes up.

# Felnis Colony

After the battle Caeser wakes up in a bed underneath the wreckage of Vehere.  The Felnis colony consists of 3 to 4 rooms containing Felnis adults and their children. One Felnis is selling healing items in limited supply. There is a hidden room containing a stronger rifle within the Felnis colony. It’s located with a safe whose combination the player must solve by talking to strange color Felnis who each have a number of the combination which the player must put in the right order.

Caeser: Where am I father? I had the most horrible dream. I saw the world being destroyed. Then I saw an evil man who kept multiplying himself. He even multiplied himself to the point of taking over you. You became him.

Augustus: Quiet son, you’ve been wounded. The mind can think strange things in the midst of trauma. It will be okay now though; these Felnis are willing to take care of you. They’ve applied a treatment to your wound, but it will take time for you to heal. I thought I was going to lose you.

Neo V: Po!

Caeser: I thought Felnis were extinct?!

Augustus: It seems they’ve managed to somehow escape from the Reditus. The sad thing is they’ve forgotten how to communicate with us. The high priest told us at one time they could communicate in the tongue of humans. Sadly, those days are gone. If the Felniss hadn’t fled they wouldn’t be here to save us. I guess things worked out in the end.

Caeser: Such strange creatures…………

Neo V: Po!

The Felnis pulls Augustus.

Augustus: I’ll be back soon. I think he wants to show me something.

The Felnis leads Augustus to the top of the building. The Magicius facility is in the distance. It’s a large structure of rubble with metal beams protruding everywhere amidst the ruins of Vehere. The ruins of Vehere still speak of the glory of the Gestaltian Empire whose buildings still reflect the technological prowess that Magicius technology brought to the world of Gaia. The sky above the rubble is red as the sun is descending.

Neo V: Po! Po!

Augustus: Can you take us there? I'm talking about the Magicius Facility in the distance. Can you do it?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus: Let the cleansing begin.

(Felnis joins the party)

Augustus enters the room where Caeser is resting.

Augustus: The Felniss say they will help us reach the Magicius facility.

Caeser: How will I go? I’m wounded.

Augustus: You have to wait here till I get back. Don’t worry, the Felniss will take care of you. I think their leader likes me.

Caeser: Be safe father. We’ll go see mother together. I can imagine her smiling face when she sees us both finally return.

Augustus: I’m sure Theresa will faint when she sees your grimy face slither into that tent. Sigh…..I dread the trials that wait ahead son. It has been told by the high priest that all men meet their end at the security protocol leading into the Magicius facility.

Caeser: Don’t go alone father. Stay here with me. I’ll get better fast.

Augustus: And what would your mother say if I took her only beloved son into the pits of hell. I am old. I’ve seen my time and now it is time for me to give my life for our people.

Caeser: (He sits up in bed) I was wounded but I can still walk. I’m not going to lose you.

Augustus: No, it’s final. I won’t leave my wife completely alone in this horrible world.

Now lie back down and pray to Corydon Deus for my safe return.

Caeser: If you wish Father.

(Augustus returns to the roof to gaze at the Magicius ruins. It is almost night now.)

Augustus speaking to himself: How will I be any different than the Rediits that have gone before me? I fear I may meet their tragic end as well and all this will be for naught.

(A shooting star flies across the sky. The screen slowly fades to black.)

Augustus: I think these Felnis have had just a little bit too much to drink.

Neo V: Po!

The Felnis is completely passed out on the floor.

Caeser: Did you check the ruins of this building Father? I'm sure there has to be something we can use and will be very important for us in the future.

Caeser: Father, don't forget Airloft. You'll need him out there.

**Historian Flashback**

Historian: If you’re reading this then we are doomed. As soon as Fabricius attacked this great capital I knew that the emperor’s thirst for power would destroy us all. So I decided to set out to quickly write a series of anecdotes about the lives of the people that lived in this building. I hid each of these anecdotes about the people in question in a safe place so that people of the future will know what happened here. I will tell you the locations of anecdotes. Please, here are our stories; the dead speak so that you may learn.

**Flashback 1:**

Justine: My commander has called me for duty. I must go.

Celine: You mustn’t. We’re just newly married. Come, we’ll run off together from the Empire and never come back.

Justine: Our forces amass against Tonsorem and it is my duty as a soldier to go. I made an oath to Gestalt. What will my parents think if I forsake my duty? How can I look at myself in the mirror?

Celine: What about the oath you made to me? Are you not forsaking your duty to be my husband? What if you die? How can I live? Forget the Emperor! He cares only for his selfish ambition.

Justine: It is final, I must go. I’ve made up my mind.

Celine: Think Justine, you are just another cog in the war machine. Leave this madness. When you look in the mirror it will be your loving wife looking back at you. We will be together forever.

A knock on the door,

Justine: I promise I will come back to you. I swear on everything that's good I will be in your arms again.

Commander: Come on Justine. It’s time to ship!

Celine: If you die, it will be for nothing, just another name that died for another man’s ambition. Go.

Justine leaves and Celine begins the weep.

Months later............

The screen fades out and fades in; we're shown Celine receiving a letter notifying her of Justine’s death.

Celine: Maybe that's him!

Commander: This is for you ma'am. I'm sorry. Really sorry. He was a brave man.

Celine: Oh no! No! No! No!

(Celine on top of building)

I can't bear to live without you anymore. The Triads have been cruel to me, but once again I will have joy in your presence. I'm coming to you my love.

She jumps….

**Flashback 2:**

There’s a wild party raging next door at the disco while Greg the janitor is trying to get some sleep. Greg takes care of the entire building, but on this night something seems off.

Greg: I take care of this building all day and these people party all night while I’m trying to get some sleep. I have to get up tomorrow at 6 to start cleaning the floors. How am I going to get some sleep? I can’t tell these people to stop or they will fire me.

(An explosion happens)

Greg: What was that?

(An explosion happens)

Greg: I swear I just heard explosions, must be a raging party. If I could just get some sleep.

(Another loud explosion)

Greg: This must be the loudest party they’ve had the entire year. I’ve never witnessed such loud noises coming from a party. Maybe I should go and check things out to make sure everything’s all right. I mean, it is my job to take care of the building after all. If they are breaking stuff it’s over. All right, let’s go see what’s going on.

Greg leaves the room and as expected he sees a wild party raging.

Greg: Huh, seems within bounds. Something’s not right. I guess I’ll go back to my room and listen for any more sounds.

When Greg almost reached his room the wall suddenly exploded which is adjacent to the dancing room. Fabricius rush into the room and starts slaughtering everyone. Cid’s 1st reaction is to go into his room and hide.

Fabricius: Hello humans, it seems you've abducted some of our brethren and slaughtered them in cold blood. Petty humans, you enjoy and then think of the consequences later. Now we are going to do the same to you that you did to our brethren! Kill them! Kill them all!!!!!!!!!!

Empire soldiers attempt to stop them but are killed. Fabricius turns to the remaining people.

Fabricius: Now for the rest of you. I'll cook you with fire!

Fire engulfs the crowd.

As they burn the people shout.

People: Please help us! Please stop! We didn’t do anything!

Fabricius: Search them out! Make sure there are no survivors!

Greg: I must go and do something. I can't stay here and hide like a coward. I must fight to protect these people and sacrifice my life if necessary.

By the time Cid reaches the party everyone is dead and Fabricius is almost all gone except one.

Greg: Stop where you are! You will pay for what you’ve done.

Fabricius: What will you do to me, puny human? I saw you run into your room like a coward, but I chose not to pursue you.

Greg lunges at the Fabricius and strikes him.

Fabricius: Did you honestly think you have the power to hurt me? Your kind has captured some of us and has slaughtered them. Now we do the same to you.

Greg: I don’t have any knowledge about this.

Fabricius: But you choose to live in this place and abide by its rules. It’s the same as if you supported them. Is it not? You know the corruption that goes on here, I can smell it. Your ruler invades weak countries and preys on the weak. His wickedness is even extended to my kind.

Greg: I’m just a lowly janitor, what can I do? I’m powerless.

Fabricius: And a coward. I’ll let you live knowing that you did nothing to save any of these people.

The Fabricius turns his back and is about to leave when Cid lunges at the Fabricius and takes hold of him, pulling the Fabricius through the large wall causing both to plummet to their death.

While falling…

Greg: In your arrogance you underestimated a lowly janitor. In your power you also prey on the weak and now you will die for it.

**Flashback 3:**

My family and I survived the Fabricius attack. At this time it dawned upon me that we were making the same mistakes that were made during the Magi War. Our harnessing of magic for the purposes of world domination was creating this backlash and I decided to try to change the minds of the people. If they could listen to reason, maybe it might not be too late to stop this madness.

The camera now switch to him in town square with a small crowd around him

Scholar: Listen! Everyone! The Warring Triads sealed themselves away for a reason. They knew the power of magic is too great for humans to comprehend. It corrupts humans and twists our very nature. We must stop all Magicius Research before it’s too late.

Crowd: It’s because of Magicius Research we are the great empire we are today. We are rich because of Magicius Research.

Scholar: We are rich but at what cost? If we dabble in magic then the natural order of things will lose its balance and the order we know will be completely lost. Please listen. The Fabricius attack is a taste of things to come.

Crowd: With Magicius we will become greater than the Fabricius and we will be able to stop them if they ever try to attack again.

Scholar: Disaster is coming. Please listen to reason!

Crowd: Shut this man up! We’re tired of listening to his nonsense!

A soldier comes and punches him and he slouches to the ground.

The scholar now sits in his home.

Scholar: All is lost.

Wife: You’ve done all you can do.

The building begins to shake.

Wife: What's happening?!

Historian: You stay here with Cecil. I'm going upstairs to check it out.

The residents rush outside the top of the building and see a piece of land slowly rising into the atmosphere. The screen blacks out and we’re left with the historian.

Historian: As I saw the island of the Fabricius rising into the sky, one thought crossed my mind. Our haughtiness in fighting against the Triads will only lead us to a greater fall. How twisted our hearts had become. Our destruction was dancing before us and all we could do was dance with it ignoring the pit that lies before us. So I fled Vehere, taking my wife and child and not looking back. Will I survive in this brave new world of destruction? I do not know, but if you are reading this please learn from our mistakes and do not revive magic. I say once again, forget this foolishness, and turn back.

Augustus: How can this man say such things, does he know the injustices that my people have suffered? At a different time and place I might have listened to him, but what is done is done. I must tread the path that is laid before me at all costs not looking back. I must reach the Magicius Facility. I must find a way to revive magic.

**Hidden room quest**

Inside the hidden room there is a note. It says, “I’m leaving my belongings here in the safe I found in the rubble. I was wounded in the Heremus and the Felnis brought me here where I suspect I will die. Take my armor, rifle, and give the note to my wife. I told the Felnis the combination. Red is first, green is second, black is third, blue is fourth, white is fifth, yellow is six, and purple is seventh. I forget the last one.

Red Felnis two:  2 Po

Green Felnis one:  1Po

Black Felnis three: 3 Po

Blue Felnis eight: 6 Po

White Felnis six: 7 Po

Yellow Felnis seven: 8 Po!

Purple Felnis four: 4 Po

Combo: 21367845

**The Ruins of Vehere**

Augustus: Airloft go!

(Airloft flies around the screen and returns to Augustus.)

Neo V: Po! Po!

Airloft: I shall explore as commanded.

(From this point the player goes forth. If the player wants to, they can return to the Felnis hideout. The player has the option to explore the map with Airloft without engaging in a battle.)

**Ruins of Vehere Enemies**

1. Mechtoid 1 (Small)
2. Mechtoid 2 (Big)
3. Mechtoid 3 (Unbeatable)
4. Magi Rats
5. Magi Zombies

The ruins of Vehere are a very large map with twisting paths and hidden items.  There are buildings that have been reduced to rubble with scrap metal protruding out from them.  Some of the buildings the player will be allowed to enter.  If possible I would like debris to fall from the ceiling onto the character only to dodge at the last moment.

The enemies are bipedal mechs that use laser beams and bombs. An enemy formation will generally contain one larger mech escorted by two smaller ones. The key to defeating the mechs is having Augustus shoot the legs of the mechs and having Airloft use plasma shot to shoot its head. Heavily armored mechs are immune to this. They require Felnis' shock spear attack to stun them. While stunned Augustus should use his shotgun to destroy the armor. After the armor is destroyed follow up with a normal spear attack with Felnis or plasma shot from Airloft for optimal results. Without finding enemy weaknesses players will have a difficult time. Mech 3’s are unbeatable in the stage of the game and drop a rare weapon.

Augustus: Airloft, we're going to need your help again!

Airloft carries Augustus and Neo V over the gap.

Augustus: Wait, something's coming.

Augustus sees a Reditus drop ship coming from a distance.

Augustus: Everyone get down!

The entire party scrambles to hide.

Augustus: That contraption must be from the Reditus. Amazing! It can fly. Or maybe it’s just a big drone like the ones we have found in the Heremus. Let’s move on, maybe we can get a closer look.

Augustus: If I could just get my hands on that to see how it works. I never dreamt that the Reditus were so advanced.

Augustus: How are these conveyor belts moving? These were once powered by Magicius. Can it be? Hmmm.....

Augustus: There must be a way to reverse these conveyor belts.

Some of the enemies are still deformed as a result of Corydon Deus’s exploitation of Fabricius. They will attempt to use magic but fail. Magi rats and zombies call reinforcements and attack in large numbers. Midway through the map Augustus will camp in an open area. He will begin talking to Felnis and Airloft.

Augustus: This looks like a good place to rest. Let’s set up camp.

Augustus: Felnis, do you think Caeser is okay?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus: Po! Means yes?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus:  What does it mean?

Neo V: Po! Po!

Augustus: Have you ever seen the security protocol?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus: I sometimes wonder if there is anything there at all.  I mean, maybe the Reditus built the Security Protocol just so that we would kill ourselves facing their blasted robots and drones trying to reach glory! Ha! (He throws a rock into nowhere).

Neo V: Po! Po!

Airloft: You are a strange species. You Felnis must have a name. It might be logical to name you Po! Po!

Neo V: Neo! Neo! Po! Po! Po!

Airloft: My linguistic component recognizes that the Felnis pronounces his name as Neo. Henceforth; I shall not name him Po! Po! Rather Neo.

Augustus (Speaking to Himself): Why didn’t they destroy it? Why leave extract? Why leave the very thing that could destroy Gaia again?

(There will be more map, boss, and then the security protocol)

A large drop ship arrives and a contingent of Reditus exits. They begin working on Heremus A.I.

Ehsran Commander: Spread out and keep watch. I have to update his directives.

Ehsran Commander: That's it; Guardian, state new directive.

Heremus Guardian: Directive 1. Eliminate all trespassers. Directive 2. Eliminate all trespassers. Directive 3. Eliminate all trespassers. Directive 4. Eliminate all trespassers.

Ehsran Commander: Alright boys let’s get out of here. I can feel its presence.

Ehsran Soldier: This place gives me the creeps.

Augustus approaches the Heremus Guardian,

Heremus Guardian: Directive 1 through 4 initiated. A battle ensues.

After defeating his 1st form,

DEFENSIVE MODE DEACTIVATED. OFFENSIVE MODE ACTIVATED. KILL INTRUDERS. KILL INTRUDERS. KILL INTRUDERS.

**Security Protocol**

The area leading up to the Magicius Facility has many pillars leading up to the front door. There are many skeletons in the ground leading up to the door. This puzzle is very similar to the one in the cave outside of Ehsran in Final Fantasy VI. The player must follow the flashing balls pattern as it moves between the pillars; except, this time the pillar mazes much longer and you will be attacked by a massive robot with six legs and laser turrets located on its front end. There are missile launchers on its back. At this point in the game the players are incapable of defeating the “Arachnoid Mech” now and will die if they attack it. Augustus and his party reach the Security Protocol and immediately the player is presented with the puzzle.

Augustus: Neo V, do you know anything about this mysterious orb? I’ve heard about it in stories the priest used to tell us, but seeing it in reality is much different.

Neo V: Po!

Augustus: Have many Rediits died here?

Neo V: Po!

Augustus: I can’t remember this route on my own. (He turns to Airloft.) I want you to put markers to remind me where the probe has gone.

Airloft:  I detect a large energy source underneath the ground. If the path is not marked correctly the defense mechanism guarding this location may be activated.

Augustus: (After Airloft is finished) Come on Augustus. You can do this.

Augustus reaches the end of the gauntlet only to be presented with a set of formidable doors with a handprint scanner to identify those who would dare to enter the Magicius Facility without proper authorization.

Augustus: Handprint authorization! We made it this far and now this? There’s no way I can get through a handprint scan. Neo, do you know what I should do?

Neo V: Po! Po!

Augustus: My father must’ve designed all these things. He truly was amazing. If only I had his technical prowess, but deprived of any form of technical education, I am but a simpleton. I can repair a drone, but hacking hand scanners is beyond me.

(Augustus sinks until a light bulb appears over his head)

Augustus: I’ll just put my hand in the scanner and see if I can set off an alarm. Maybe the door will open and we can sneak in. How does that sound Neo?

Neo V: Po! Po! Po!

Augustus: Here goes nothing!

(Augustus places his hand in the scanner. It begins scanning. A voice speaks from the scanner, “Welcome Dr. Augustus.”)

Augustus: I'm not a doctor. I'm not even a Reditus. How does it know my name? You get a bad feeling about this too Neo?

Neo V: Po!

Airloft: My sensors detect a strong source of power located within these ruins. It is my deduction that somehow this power had something to do with the biometric scanner recognizing you.

Augustus: Strong source of power huh? Could this be what the Reditus fear? Maybe this is why they trust only drones to guard this place. Well, here goes nothing. Let’s find the Magicia extract.

Inside the Magicius facility are ruined machines and equipment. There are wires and machine pieces laying everywhere. Amidst the machinery is vegetation of several kinds. There are flowers of different colors, vines growing up the walls, and grass growing out of the rubble. The roof is in a state of disrepair allowing rays of sunlight in. The entire scene gives a reminder of the apocalypse that once occurred here.

Augustus: What happened here? How is vegetation growing here? Where are the Reditus? It seems this facility has been abandoned for ages. Maybe there is some kind of access terminal we could use to figure out what happened here. Let’s take a look around.

**Enemies in Magicius Facility**

1.) Deformed Monkey.

2.) Emaciated Baboon.

3.) Crimson Guerrilla.

The enemies here are primates who have been deformed by Magi poisoning. The poisoning has caused the animal's essence to be turned inside out. Instead of two arms the monkeys have six. The Emaciated Baboon has twisted sores all over his body. The Crimson Guerrilla is covered in its own blood that slowly oozes out of its own body.

As the player traverses through the facility the primates will attempt to push barrels and robot machinery onto the unsuspecting party below. The player must push the correct button before the object hits to avoid damage. Surprisingly some of the facility machinery still works. Augustus must use a conveyor belt to access another part of the facility. Airloft must be used to knock a crane hook down so that the party can go from one platform to another.

(Augustus finds an access terminal).

Augustus: Time to put what I studied to good use.

(Augustus begins typing at the terminal).

Augustus: Eureka! I’m in.

The player can now read logs regarding Cid’s experiments on the Fabricius. A list is given through the database.

1. Magicius Fusion.
2. Fabricius Transfusion.
3. Effects of Magicia production on Fabricius.
4. The nature of Fabricius.

1. Magicius Fusion: the essence of Fabricius can be joined with humans to give humans immense magical power. One of my female subjects has an incredible propensity towards magic. I will have to do more tests to see if her powers can be reproduced on other humans.

2. Fabricius Transfusion: The Fabricius placed within a glass holding cell as a synthesizer slowly extracts the magical essence. The essence is then processed into energy for all types of various machines.

3. Nature of Fabricius: Fabricius seems beastlike and their characteristics. I would describe Fabricius as nothing more than magical beasts from another world. I do notice that they do hold familial relationships oftentimes showing great displeasure when certain other Fabricius are placed within the tubes.

4. Effects of Magical Production: Magical production kills the Fabricius. The Fabricius also feels pain. They seem to have certain familial bonds. When one Fabricius dies, sometimes the other Fabricius will howl.

Augustus: Legend has it that Corydon Deus received his power from other gods. Could these Fabricius be the gods spoken of by legend?

Augustus comes to a bridge leading to Corydon Deus but is attacked by a giant gorilla. A boss fight ensues.

**Twisted Guerrilla**

The Twisted Guerrilla is King of all the corrupted primates. In the start of the fight a dialog box appears.

Twisted Guerrilla:  It's mine.  Oh. Oh. Oh. Ee. Ee.

He calls on other primates to help in the fight against you. Twisted Guerrillas body has missing hair in many places and its eyes are completely red. Felnis can learn “Donkey Kong Thump” dance when the Twisted Guerrilla attacks with “Donkey Kong Thump.” This move attacks the entire party with a series of punches. The guerrilla is weak against fire; therefore, plasma shots are effective. Once Felnis learns “Donkey Kong Thump” during the battle Felnis can use it against the entire monkey party to great effect. After the fight Augustus and his party enter the next room only to find a shimmering Magicia guarded by a blue aura. They are greeted by voice from the inside the force field.

**Reviving Corydon Deus**

Corydon Deus: Welcome Augustus. I’ve been waiting for you. I saw you there outside the Magicius Facility. I figured you would be like the others, but lo and behold you’re the first in 100 years to make it here.

Augustus: My Lord! (He bows on one knee.)

Corydon Deus: Arise faithful one there is still much more for you to do.

Augustus: What happened to your body my Lord? We were told that you hid your face because of the unfaithfulness of the Reditus.

Corydon Deus: When I absorbed all the power of the Fabricius into my body I also became Fabricius.  When that witch Terrae and her blasphemous Reditus friends defeated me I turned into Magicia. Afraid of my power they locked me here and told no one. They currently use my own power to run a generator in the other part of the facility. Turn off the generator and I will be free. Then I will explain what must be done.

Augustus: How was I able to get through the hand scanner?

Corydon Deus: My magic power extends slightly beyond the confines of this force field to the outer edges of the facility. I was able to disrupt their AI technology and make a loophole that allowed me to access the hand scanner.

Augustus: You knew my name?

Corydon Deus: (Cough) Yes I know all my faithful ones by name and you are my most faithful. I attempted to use the monkeys to interfere with the generator, but alas, they are not faithful ones like you and were corrupted by the Reditus. The beasts cannot fulfill Corydon Deus’s will, but only humans. Now begone! You must do my work with haste. The Reditus could be here at any moment if they detect interference in this accursed shield.

Augustus: Yes my Lord, I will expedite this work and set you free. Let’s go Neo V.

Neo V: Po!

Corydon Deus: If you need supplies there is a vending machine in working order here.

(The area leading up to the generator is no longer guarded just by monkeys. Turrets now support the monkeys as they do battle with you. Turrets are weak against nothing. The player must flee the battle if there are three turrets in the same battle. They will combine into one shot which will instantly kill the entire party.

The generator can only be turned off by flipping three switches in the right order. Each switch is guarded by two Crimson Guerrilla’s and two turrets. Each switch is located in a different section of the map. A hint as to the order of the switches is given by the manual located on the desk before entering the area.

Manual: The switches must be flipped in the right order for the generator to shut down. Our desire should be skyward, but if reality sets in then look left or right for those closest to us. Finally, when all options have been exhausted, look down to see your grave. By this easy riddle the player must deduce that they must first turn the North switch, then the East switch, then the South switch.

When all the switches have been flipped in the correct order the master generator was shut down. Then three massive mechs will come out of ports within the walls when this happens. Every step the player takes the mechs will also take a step. The player must take every precaution to avoid them. If the player does choose to fight them these robots will take a lot of resources to fight so it will be wise for them to avoid them. When the player finally reaches Corydon Deus a red alarm will begin blaring.

**Escape from Magicius Facility**

Corydon Deus: Quickly, I and your soul must become one. I will explain later. You will now be able to use magic to subdue our enemies. Once we join there is no going back. Are you ready?

If yes, Corydon Deus: Receive my power chosen one.

If no, Corydon Deus: Do not be faithless. You will not receive your reward if you doubt. Now come, what will you do?

The player has no choice but to say yes or he will keep rehashing the same conversation loop.

Corydon Deus: Now let’s go! Soon the Reditus will be here. This is not the place to fight them; everyone, head towards the exit.

The player now has limited access to magic, but will get stronger as the player gets more magic points. Red lights will continue to flash as the player moves towards the exit. The enemies now are more powerful versions of the robotic enemies the player has fought thus far.

Augustus: It’s locked, there’s no escape! What will we do?

Corydon Deus: If I remember correctly there were carts we used for dumping trash. We can use these to escape. Look at the wall below. Focus all your magic abilities on this wall and melt an opening.

(Augustus does this and learns Fire in the process.)

Augustus: Felnis, Airloft, let’s go!

(They first go, and then Augustus follows.)

This area is the same type as the last area. When Augustus is about to exit the first room, there's a blast.

Corydon Deus: The Reditus are here! They must’ve blasted to the front door. They are right behind us!

A 10 minute timer set. The player must dispatch or run from enemies and make it to the cart area before the timer runs out. If the player’s timer runs out, the player suddenly enters a long endless battle where they are surrounded by Reditus soldiers and fight until they die. When the player dies a text box will appear.

Reditus Soldier: Die Rediits scum. Shot two Felnis with one bullet. Corydon Deus is now truly finished.

This part should be challenging. The enemies are difficult to run from forcing the player to fight the player should use osmosis on Magi Zombies which randomly appeared to refill magic due to constant use of Fire.

If the player keeps alive through multiple reinforcements the Reditus soldiers will be amazed.

Reditus Soldiers: What amazing stamina these cultists have. Their woman must be satisfied. No wonder their women are able to bear lives in such wretched tents.

As you are reaching the end Reditus will blow a hole in the wall through which Reditus Soldiers will come pouring through. The player must eliminate two groups before they can continue.  Once the player reaches the trash drop off Augustus will jump into the cart.

Augustus: Is this safe?

Neo V: Po! Po!

Airloft: My sensors detect a rail through the entire tunnel without interruption. There is a 90% chance we may succeed.

Corydon Deus: This isn’t safe, but my power will protect you.

**Cart Mini Game**

This begins a cart minigame where the player pushes B at the right time in order to jump the gaps while being attacked by Air Reavers and Reditus Soldiers in carts. Air Reavers have two propellers with missiles underneath. The soldiers in the carts will be named Reditus Soldiers. Reditus Soldiers will attack with “Ram” ability which reduces the stability of your card. If your stability bar reaches zero you die. If you miss a jump, you will also die.

When the party is towards the end they will be attacked by a mini boss named “Ole Betsy.”  “Ole Betsy” is a tank placed on a track. In order to defeat “Ole Betsy” the player must first destroy its front armor while being shot by turrets. The player can destroy the turrets first, but this will only distract the player from attacking the most damaging part which is the front armor. The front armor damages the stability of the cart and will eventually lead to the party’s death. Once the front armor is destroyed the player can attack the engine.

When the front armor has been destroyed the enemy will change attack patterns.  “Ole Betsy” will attack with “Laser Burst” which is quite damaging to your entire party. Once again turrets are a distraction only doing a fraction of damage compared to the main body. The player will reach the ruined suburbs of Vehere.

Augustus: Neo V, where are we? Can you show us the way to your hideout?

Neo V: Po!

Corydon Deus: The Reditus will be following behind us. We can lose them in the ruins.

Augustus: Neo V, you lead the way.

Meanwhile…….……

**Ehsran**

The screen blacks out and appears over the Reditus headquarters in Ehsran. Long gone are the days when Ehsran was a simple mining village. Ehsran has been rebuilt to be the epicenter of the Reditus world. As Reditus technology has advanced they have realized Ehsran was sitting on vast mineral reserves that could be used to make wonders that they never could possibly have imagined during the age of the Magi Wars. It is here in the Reditus headquarters that they hear that the Magicia of Corydon Deus has been stolen. In the room are many machines which look like computers by our modern-day standards.

Vice – Adm. Constantine: I told you we should’ve posted guards there.

Adm. Anthony: Our forefathers could barely resist the temptation to take his powers upon themselves, how do you think our soldiers could possibly have resisted? They can barely resist the brothels let alone unlimited magic power.

Vice Adm. Constantine: Adm. didn’t I see you there a couple days ago?

Adm. Anthony: Oh yes. I was passing by your mother’s home, Vice Admiral.

Vice Adm. Constantine: (Laughs out loud with a hearty laugh) Adm. Anthony, your humor in the direst of times is comforting. Your ability to keep your cool when things heat up is why fully trust your ability to command. Isn’t that right men?

Soldiers in Headquarter: Ehsran forever!

Adm. Anthony: Now to the business at hand. The cultists have the power of Corydon Deus now which means at least one of them can use magic. If this were 100 years ago this would’ve mattered, but now technology has greatly surpassed magic and in all ways. There is all the magic we need in the minerals found below Gaia. The days when we believed that we needed the power of Fabricius to fulfill our ambitions are long gone. All we need now is the power of our minds. They think they have the ultimate power in their false god Corydon Deus. We will show them the true power when we crush them and their forsaken camp forever.

Soldiers in room: Ehsran forever!

Adm. Anthony: I have already sent a task force against these people. It was foolish on my father’s part to have mercy on the people whose fake god nearly destroyed the world and our ancestors with it. We will completely remove the cultists and the memory of Corydon Deus from the face of Gaia forever.

Soldiers in Room: Ehsran forever!

Adm. Anthony: Vice Adm., you have the throne. If anything happens, update me immediately. I’m retiring to my room.

(Adm. Anthony leaves and goes to his room)

(Adm. Anthony begins contemplating speaking as if his father was standing in the room)

Adm. Anthony: If only I was there to keep you alive. I would’ve fought side-by-side with you until Corydon Deus was vanquished and the world would’ve never known such a great tragedy; but now the enemy who martyred you is back again. The fact it draws breath sullies your great name. I will have my vengeance upon him for your great namesake. I will destroy Corydon Deus, but if I fail, so help me Gaia, then will find a way to bring you from the dead to do it.

**Residential Ruins of Vehere**

**Enemies of Residential Ruins**

1.) Rabid Hound

2.) War Dog

3.) Bulldog Bruiser

4.) Magicius Pooch

**Cannibal Rediit**

Augustus and his party find themselves in the remains of a residential area of Vehere after escaping from the Reditus in the Magicius Facility. Most of the homes are without roofs. Debris and other belongings are scattered in the streets. The Reditus are hot on the trail of Augustus. Augustus and his party see red searchlights as they travel through the ruined streets. They must avoid these red searchlights or face battle. While traveling down the main street a shadow of a hover ship stops near them. Augustus must scatter to hide or be seen. While hiding a voice speaks in a whisper.

Unknowing Voice: Common inside or they will catch you.

A door opens from inside a nearby home. Augustus quickly runs inside. There is an old lady who welcomes them.

Old Lady: I see you caught the attention of the Reditus. You must’ve done something amazing to draw their attention to this part of the world. I haven’t seen them in ages. Take a seat. They will go soon. Now tell me. What is it you have done?

Augustus: Corydon Deus lives! I set him free now he lives in me.

Old Lady:  Shhhh…. Quiet. I want you to prove it.

(Augustus casts Cure on the old lady)

Old Lady: Wow! I haven’t felt this way in ages. Oh my, magic lives again. I feel as if I should go with you, back to our village, but I will stay here. I have my dogs to tend to, they keep me company. I began searching for my son in the Heremus after he became lost. I’m a widow. He was all that I had, but alas, I gave up searching for him and found a home here with all these dogs. They’re quite hungry right now and so am I. If you don’t mind, I would like you to die. It’s been a couple weeks since I had a visitor and I’m famished.

(Shocked, Augustus steps back and enters a boss battle)

**Cannibal Rediit Boss**

Cannibal Rediit: I’ve never had the privilege of having Felnis. I will make crème de la Felnis for dessert after eating that Corydon Deus inside of you.  Hehe!

Cannibal Rediit is guarded by her dog so you will be unable to attack until her dogs have been dispatched. Once they have been dispatched she will be vulnerable for a brief time where she was shot and grown if you attack her. She will quickly call more dogs which you have to dispatch. Eventually she will get frustrated and call her big dog “Bruno.” He looks like a giant pit bull. He’s technically the final boss. When you defeat him the old lady will surrender.

Old Lady: Please have mercy on me. I surrender.  I haven’t eaten in days. What will my dogs do without me? Please.

(Do you execute her? Yes or no?)

If yes, Augustus casts fire on her until she burns alive while she shouts, “Nooooo! My dogs!”

If no, the old lady says, “Thank you, oh thank you, you won’t regret this.  Come back later and I will show you something that will blow your mind. Thank you so much!”

If you have chosen to have mercy on the Cannibal Rediit this will open up an optional boss later on from which you can receive a rare item.

**Felnis’ Hideout Revisited**

When Augustus leaves the home of the Cannibal Rediit the Reditus are gone. They are able to exit the Vehere Residential Ruins and make their way to the hideout of the Felnis which is located in the Heremus mini map. The mini map is separate from world travel. If the player exits any place of the Heremus they will be able to fast travel to a previous location they have been before. Right now fast travel is suspended for the player, but will open up once all the events of the Heremus are complete.

Augustus enters the hideout of the Felnis. Once Caeser sees Augustus, Caeser becomes overjoyed.

Caeser: Father you, you are alive! I can’t believe you made it. What happened? What did you see? Did you finally give up on these old legends and quietly resign yourself to live a quiet life at home?

Augustus: The opposite son! Corydon Deus lives inside of me now!

Caeser: What? You have to be kidding me. You’ve grown more delusional since you left. Felnis please give my father some water fast. I fear the heat has taken a toll on him.

Augustus: I can prove it. Son, hold your sword in the air.

Caeser: Hurry, please, be done with these dilutions. If it will satisfy you I will do it.

(Caeser moves to grab a sword from the chest in his room. Then he comes back to the room where Augustus is waiting and holds up a sword in the air.)

Corydon Deus: (Speaking only to Augustus) Do not waste your strength on this boy. I sense a great battle ahead which will require all your strength. Allow your son to scoff at you. You will be vindicated shortly.

Augustus: Never mind.

Caeser: See. Delusions.

Felnis: Po! Po!

Airloft: What is the meaning of delusional? I must update my dictionary when we reach camp.

Augustus: Get ready Caeser, we make haste to our home. I think they are in grave danger.

Caeser: We have always lived in harmony with the Reditus. What has changed? As long as we do what they say they leave us alone.

Augustus: Not anymore Caeser, our redemption has come. Now the Reditus will be under our feet.

Caeser: Whatever you say father in this imaginary world of yours. I’m done trying to reason with you. We have to once more make our way through the Heremus. We will take a rest and leave immediately in the morning. What do you say father?

Augustus: We leave tonight under the cover of darkness to hide from the airships of the Reditus.

Caeser: We haven’t seen their ships here in ages. Okay…...as you wish. I just want to put this nonsense behind us. I will marry my sweet Theresa immediately and forget this ever happened. I will move in her tent so I no longer have to hear about your delusions of Corydon Deus living inside of you. The Heremus is most dangerous at night. Are you sure we can’t go in the morning?

Augustus: I’m sure.

Caeser: If I die in the middle of the Heremus at night my death is on your head.

Augustus: Get ready, let’s go.

**Heremus at Night**

**Enemies of Heremus at Night:**

1.) Vehere Mummy

2.) Soul Eater

3.) Lost Rediit

4.) Tormented Apparition

Caeser: We were told by the priest as children never to enter the Heremus at night for it is haunted by the souls who are trapped in Vehere when it was destroyed.

Augustus: I was also told the same thing.

Caeser: What was that?

(An apparition appears before them with an outstretched arm. Then it walks away.)

Augustus: What was he trying to say to us?

Caeser: Maybe he needs our help. Let’s follow him.

The player must follow the ghost till the next screen. Augustus and Caeser follow the ghost until they reach a great whole in the ground. The party looks into the hold and suddenly a ghost appears behind them and pushes them into the hole. They fall until they land in sparkling water filled with ghostly apparitions.

## Underworld

Augustus: Airloft can you light things up a bit?

(A searchlight extends from Airloft. Half buried skeletons appear on the ground outside the water. Suddenly an apparition again appears in front of them.)

Ghost: These are the souls damned by Corydon Deus. There is no escape.

Corydon Deus: Is this now? I don’t remember damning anybody unless they were already damned from the beginning. There must be a way for us to escape from this place.

The player will face many ghosts in the underworld. Airloft healing abilities will make for an effective weapon against the different ghosts here. Soul Eaters can cast instant death. The player will speak with several souls during their search for an escape. The player will find a path leading out of the graveyard into a room where several ghosts with more humanlike appearance are dining and sitting at a bar.

Soul (Fashionable Lady): We always dine here. It’s such a lovely evening. Would you care to join me in a dance? (She begins to dance with Caeser.)

Soul (Butler): We have the finest delicacies brought everywhere from the Empire here. Would you like to try? Yes or no?

If yes, the Butler brings out a covered plate. Once opened it reveals nothing but bones and is set before Augustus at a table. Augustus is shocked.

Butler: Enjoy.

If no, Butler: If you change your mind I’ll be waiting in the corner.

Soul (Female): Isn’t Vehere lovely this time of year. Pollution from the Magicius Facility is swept away by the cool winds from the north.

Soul (Male): Emperor Gestalt is the wisest ruler on Gaia. He has grown our small community into a giant empire that now rules most of Gaia with its Magicius prowess. Long live the Emperor!

Caeser: Father, who is Emperor Gestalt?

Augustus: I don’t know Caeser. The priest keeps the Annals of Time secret. He says it will corrupt our mind. We must trust the priest. He knows best.

Soul (Male sitting at the bar): Would you make a toast to Emperor Gestalt?

Augustus (Augustus looks at Caeser): Whose Emperor Gestalt? Ok, a toast, should I?

Augustus must choose yes or no, and then the player has an option of the toast they will give.

1.) If yes, Augustus: Emperor Gestalt is a mighty man, stronger than the wind, who shakes Gaia whenever he steps.

Or

2.) Augustus: Emperor Gestalt is a great man of Corydon Deus. Because of his belief in Corydon Deus he has been exalted among all the rulers of the earth.

If yes,

1.) Bar Man: Here ye, hear ye. What you say is true. These words are spoken as if a muse of beauty whispered great things into your ears. Player receives Beer Goggles.

2.)  Since when did Emperor Gestalt rely on any man? Corydon Deus is only a pawn in the hands of the Emperor. Brace yourself imbecile. Hiccup! (Attacks the party. After being defeated, the party receives the same item as 1.)

If no, Bar Man: You look a little uptight. I’ll buy you a drink. A legal friend. Long live the Emperor!

If the party leaves the bar they enter a long tunnel. If they attempt to go back to the bar there will be nothing but ruins where the bar once was. Everyone will be gone. Midway through the tunnel a voice will shout from nowhere.

**Leonidas**

???: Wait for me! I’ve lost my way. Could you show me the way from here?

Augustus: We have also lost our way. There must be an exit around here somewhere.

???: Can I also tag along for a bit. We can work together and escape this accursed place.

After leaving the hallway the party enters an open area.

Caeser: I feel like taking a rest. It seems like we’ve been walking forever. So Fran, how did you end up here?

Leonidas: My name is Leonidas. I was betrayed by those whose life I had sworn to defend. I wanted peace and my wicked betrayers wanted war. I died in a vain attempt to have that peace. Now I wander these forsaken halls while my betrayers probably sit drinking, feasting, and enjoying the spoils of war.

Caeser: What a horrible world we live in. My people also suffer for their beliefs. We live in poverty while our oppressors want nothing.

Augustus: Corydon Deus, what would you have us do?

Leonidas: Whose name did you say?

Augustus: Corydon Deus.

Leonidas: I also knew a Corydon Deus. He was one of my betrayers.

Augustus: You must be thinking of another Corydon Deus. My Corydon Deus is a great God who will deliver our people.

Leonidas: If I see my Corydon Deus again I will bring my blade to his neck and let it feast upon his blood. Then I will take his carcass and drag it to the streets for everyone to shit on. I’m happy your Corydon Deus is a god and not a worthless scumbag who kills innocent women and children.

Corydon Deus: The way out of this place is to prove your worth to the owner of the Underworld.

Leonidas: Then I will cut up his body in little pieces and send them to every great city on Gaia.

Caeser: Don’t worry my friend. One day vengeance will be yours. First you must escape from this place.

Corydon Deus: He knows who the owner of this place is.

Augustus: Sir, sorry to interrupt you, but who is the owner of this place?

Leonidas: Lich. He’s a bloody fiend. I tried to show my worth to him, but he barred me from even trying. He said that since I was defeated by a man as cowardly as Corydon Deus there is no redemption for me. You can try though. I can lead you there to them. Leonidas joins the party.

**The Brooch and the Riddle Side Quest**

The party will continue three series of catacombs with many caskets contained within. Some will contain treasure and others will contain Vehere Mummies. There is one departed soul who wanders here and there as if searching for something.

Wondering Soul: I lost it.  I lost it. My beloved’s brooch. Where could it be? It’s all I have to remind me of the sweet times we had together. If you find it, could you please give it to me? I will reward you as handsomely as I can. The brooch is located within one of these coffins.

(The brooch is guarded by an extra powerful mummy (Magicius Mummy) who acts as a mini boss.)

Wondering soul (when you bring the brooch): I will give you what is greater than any treasure. It’s wisdom. Lich will ask a riddle before he even considers giving you your freedom; granted that you’re not a coward. He found me a coward because I was scared to propose to my beloved before the destruction of the world. Now I spend my days wandering these halls living in regret, but not you my friends. I sense something different and you. There is a great amount of courage in you. I will give you a hint to Lich’s riddle.

Augustus: Just tell us the answer.

Wondering Soul: No, I like your company. If you’re wrong we will be spending more time here together. Hehe. So here, just to give you a fighting chance. The Lich will ask you,

“If I am dead there is no death,

But nor would life exist,

No universe would ever be,

No water, Earth, or stone.

No riddle ever spoke or read,

My binding spell escapes,

Unconquered by the darkness yet,

The light escapes my fate.

I appear in the fires flames,

Lurk in the dragons den,

The number of a man a claim,

Within me there resides.

The answer is not within the riddle itself and appears at the end of every last word. Even if you answer the riddle correctly there is no guarantee that the Lich will let you go.

Augustus: Corydon Deus is with us and he will deliver us from this ghastly place.

Wondering Soul: Did you say Corydon Deus? The butcher of Doma, who poisoned an entire castle, killing all the women and children inside, my mother died there.

Augustus: No, my Corydon Deus is a mighty god who empowers me.

Wondering Soul: Oh, strange. Your god could’ve chosen a better name then Corydon Deus. Good luck to you.

Caeser (As they are walking away): Why do all these lost souls have something against the name of Corydon Deus?

Augustus: He must’ve been a tyrant of lore that the priests have not mentioned to us.

When the party finally reaches Lich he is dealing with someone else from the Underworld.

Loss Soul: Lich, I beg you, please let me out of here. My wife was pregnant and she must’ve given birth by now. Let me see my child.

Lich: That was 200 years ago you fool. Your wife and child are dead and their descendants do not know who you are. This is your home now. (Lich opens a hole and throws the soul in.)

Lich: Off with you to the deepest and most dreaded part of the underworld. This is what you get for disturbing me. Next.

Leonidas: This is as far as I can go my friends. If the Lich sees me my fate might be the same as that poor soul. Please remember me if you find a way to resurrect the dead. My soul will not rest till I have my vengeance.

Caeser: I am in your debt. I will help you find your justice. Our lore speaks of a god who can raise the dead. If I find such a god I will plead with him on your behalf. Until then, stay……dead, but alive with hope.

(Leonidas leaves)

**Lich Boss**

Corydon Deus: Prepare yourself Augustus. I don’t think Lich will let you leave without a fight.

(The party approaches Lich)

Lich: What do you want, fools?

Augustus: We want out of this grave.

Lich: I sense immense power within you. You might be one of the few who have been worthy to see light again. Now answer this, (Lich repeats the riddle which the wandering soul told the party beforehand.)

If the player types E, Lich: I like you. I challenge you to a battle to prove the courage which I already know is inside of you. I’ll even hold back to give you a fighting chance.

If the player types anything else, Lich: I will hold back. You may be courageous, but you are dimwitted. Maybe I was wrong about you. En guarde.

If the player gets the riddle wrong Lich will be twice as strong. There is a good chance the player will not be able to defeat Lich without answering the riddle right. If the player defeats Lich when he is at his strongest, Lich will respond like this.

Lich: You have defeated me when I wasn’t holding back. Here take this. (Player receives a strong weapon)

If you defeat him after answering the riddle,

Lich: I was right about you. Your freedom has been granted. Augustus, you will kill many Reditus and take their place. I’m excited to have the Underworld, a bustling afterlife with lots of new faces. Be gone from here.

(The party is transported from the Underworld.)

Caeser: The owner of the Underworld knew your name. How’s that so?

Augustus: These are strange things to consider. Maybe it is my destiny to defeat the Reditus.

Caeser: It is father. I believe you are going to do something great for our people.

Augustus: We must move quickly. Let’s go.

Corydon Deus: Soon most of your strength will be asked of you.

(When Augustus and his party arrive from the Underworld it is still dark out. The player’s party must continue to the camp.)

**Rediit Camp Revisited**

When Augustus arrives at the camp both the guards in front run into the camp telling everyone of his arrival. Both Theresa and Augustus' wife run to meet the party.

Augustus Wife: You’re back, I can’t believe it. I was beginning to wonder if I would have to ask the high priest to let me use his bathroom if you know what I mean.

Theresa: I thought you were dead for sure Caeser. I had two proposals last week. I almost said yes but here you are in the flesh. I can’t believe it. Are you sure you’re not a ghost?

Caeser: I was a ghost, but I came back from the grave.

Theresa: What?

Caeser: I’ll explain later. Right now we have a marriage to plan.

Theresa: And babies to make.

Caeser: How? What?

Theresa: I’ll explain later.

Augustus: I found someone special out there. She was the queen of the Heremus and her dogs were her loyal subjects. I became her king.

Augustus' wife: Did you teach the dogs to bow before you in order to give you a sense of royalty?

Augustus: Yes, I had to beat them into submission until one day my queen tried to eat me and then I had to thrash them all into submission.

Augustus Wife: Then show me some of these submission techniques tonight.

Augustus: Huh? What?

Augustus Wife: I’ll explain later.

Caeser: Everyone gathers around. I have an announcement to make. Theresa and I are getting married tomorrow in front of Corydon Deus and everyone. So please come.

Camp: So exciting, things are looking up for us.

High Priest: Augustus, I want to speak to you in my tent tomorrow morning before their marriage. I want to know everything that happened to you. So come early. You’re the first to have survived this ordeal and I’m dying to know how.

Augustus: Yes, my Lord.

(Priest leaves.)

Augustus: Caeser!

Caeser: Yes father?

Augustus: Come home late tonight. Spend some time with Theresa.

(On the way to the tent Augustus meets his wife in front of the tent)

Augustus Wife: You can teach me your submission techniques now, and don’t worry, I won’t try to eat you, or at least I’ll try not to.

(Early-morning Augustus leaves his tent.  We follow Augustus as he leaves his tent to meet the high priest. What follows is the conversation between Augustus and the high priest. Afterwards Augustus can explore.

**Augustus and High Priest**

High Priest: I was waiting for you Augustus. Now tell me what happened out there?

(Augustus reiterates his entire ordeal.)

High Priest: So you say that Corydon Deus became magicia, you absorbed his power, and now he lives inside of you. Can you prove this bold claim?

(Augustus walks up to the curtain behind the high priest and casts fire, setting it on fire.)

High Priest: Hurry, do something about the fire! How did it start?

(Augustus casts ice putting out the fire.)

High Priest: You can use magic! You must not tell anyone about this. The people are expecting Corydon Deus to be revived, not living inside of you, or whatever you claim he is doing. They may even start to worship you and that would be blasphemy. Now go, we will speak of this no more.

Augustus: As you wish, High Priest. I will do as you asked for the sake of Corydon Deus.

Corydon Deus: He does not have my interest in mind. He only wishes to keep his power over this pathetic camp. I will have this man’s head on a platter.

High Priest: Yes, for the sake of Corydon Deus and the well-being of his people. Now let us enjoy this day. Soon your son will be married. I will see you at the ceremony.

Augustus: By your leave my Lord.

(Augustus leaves the tent.)

High Priest: As much as it pains me I must kill Augustus or I will lose my position. All these fools never come back. It’s a shame that the one that succeeded is as important to the camp as he is. Regardless, his son will replace him and life will continue on as normal. The only question that remains is how I must end his life. Let’s see…….

Caeser (Standing outside High Priest’s tent): What did the high priest say? While Caeser speaks a dove leaves the backside of the High Priest’s tent.

Augustus: Nothing in particular. He was just happy to have me back and he asked me about all that happened.

Caeser: Did you tell him about the whole Corydon Deus living inside of you?

Augustus: No, of course not. Come, we have much to do before your wedding celebration.

**Rediit Camp People Revisited**

Tommy: To think, you guys made it back alive. Did you revive magic? If you did, would you set Billy over there on fire? I want to see him burn.

Billy: Did you learn magic out there in the Heremus? If you did, freeze Tommy over there to death. He is so annoying. He’s always running from me. I’m not able to catch him.

Old Widow: I watched over your wife while you were gone. (If Augustus has the letter from the Felnis hideout from her deceased husband he will give it to the old widow.)

Old Widow if Augustus hands her the letter,

Old Widow (Begins sobbing): Oh my love, you died for all of us, alone, in the middle of the Heremus. He was a brave man like you, but destiny had different plans for us. (Player receives Husband’s Keepsake.)

Temple Guards: Praise Corydon Deus you’re back!

Chief Hunter: How did the high priest’s drone help you? I’m sure you killed lots of beasts out there. Too bad you couldn’t bring back all that meat; we’d have an awesome feast.

Seer: I can sense a great power within you now. You found something in the Magicius Facility, but it wasn’t what you were expecting. I sense that seeds of the great tribulation have been planted that will only bring great trouble to you and your family.  It is best you keep secret whatever you find until the appointed time. People cannot handle the truth.

Caeser: My father found nothing there. He just kept blabbering how Corydon Deus lives inside of him now. I also wish to keep secret what he believes in order to save myself from further embarrassment.

Augustus: We will not speak further on this matter. I will do as you suggested, Seer.

Childless Husband: Theresa and Caeser will make a beautiful couple. You deserve to have a peaceful life. I hope they have children that we can play with.

Childless Wife: Oh, I can’t wait for their wedding. These occasions fill my heart with joy.

Herdsman: While you were gone half my cattle passed away. Where is Corydon Deus when you need him? It’s as if he ignores our prayers.

Herdsman Wife: Yak’s porridge is becoming increasingly sparse as our cattle numbers are reduced.

Augustus: That’s actually not a bad thing. Do not worry our deliverance is near. We have found a new place for our camp with ample water.

Socrates: While you were gone I secretly married Miriam. Please do something for Augustus. I know the high priest claims all the widows for his personal enjoyment, but this must stop. I would escape from this camp with her, but where can I go? Both of our families would starve to death in the harsh winds of the Heremus.

Corydon Deus: I will burn the high priest alive and let you digest his ashes.

Socrates: Okay…… Augustus seems a little harsh. I was thinking maybe a good talking to might solve the problem, but if you think that setting a high priest on fire and letting me digest his ashes is the right solution then…… Okay, let me ask Miriam about that. Until then do what you can.

Miriam: While you were gone I secretly gave birth to a child. I gave that child to one of the consorts of the high priest who already has a baby. She secretly keeps that child hidden. When my baby cries people just think that it’s her child not mine. Please do something Augustus. I can't bear this anymore.

**Mech Wannabe Side Quest Cont’d**

Augustus: Here are the spare parts you told us to get.

Mech Wannabe: You guys are amazing! Watch this!

The man quickly fixes the Mech. He then quickly drives it around the camp and comes back.

Mech Wannabe: If you guys are ever in a fix I’m your man help you out. If you need anything, I mean anything; except, some things, I mean, never mind, you get the idea. I’ll help you out.

Augustus: I’m glad to be of service.

**Caeser’s Marriage**

When the player attempts to enter Theresa’s tent they will be asked if they are ready for Caeser’s marriage. The player will have to fight several battles here so they should come prepared.

(Augustus and Caeser enter the tent.)

**Heremus Rose Side Quest Continued**

Theresa: You know its bad luck to see the bride before the wedding. I forgot to ask you, did you ever find the Heremus Rose I asked for?

If yes, Caeser: You wouldn’t believe what I had to do for this rose.

Theresa: It’s looking kind of wilted.

Caeser: After I picked it I wedged it between the pages of my journal to keep it from rotting.

Theresa: It’s looking kind of………..

Caeser: It’s been dead for more than a month now.  You can still see the shape and color because I pressed it for you, but the color and vibrancy is gone. When it was alive it was very beautiful.

Theresa: Do you think you could pick another one for me; this time without pressing it?

Caeser (Caeser gets angry):………..

Theresa: Just joking. It was the thought that counts. Thanks dear. Here, take this for your troubles. (Player receives Theresa’s Ribbon). Quest is now closed.

If no, Theresa: All I asked for was a freaking rose. I see how our relationship is going to go. You’re already taking me for granted. You’re going to have to work this one off by giving lots of other gifts to make up for my disappointment.

Caeser: Do you realize what I’ve been through? I barely survived out there and all you can think about is a rose.

Theresa: It shows you weren’t thinking about me. You probably found someone else out there, some Heremus filth that doesn’t even have a tent. You men are all the same.

Caeser: Were going to get married soon. I’ll make it up in some other way.

Quest over.

**Caeser’s Marriage Continued**

Caeser: I’m going home to change. I will be waiting for you at the temple.

Theresa: I still have to soak my face in yak’s milk. Did you memorize Corydon Deus’s vow for marriage?

Caeser: Corydon Deus’s vow?

Theresa: Yes silly, the vow we both take in front of Corydon Deus before getting married. Then we exchange trinkets that are a sign of our love for one another. I'm giving back the rose. Give me during the ceremony. If you didn’t give the rose Theresa will say, “Since you didn’t care enough to give me a Heremus Rose, what trinket could possibly impress me?” The player will have to give up one of their useful items excluding potions.

Theresa: My trinket is a secret. I love the suspense. Meet me at Corydon Deus’s temple in two minutes. Here is the vow for you to memorize. (Player received Corydon Deus’s Vow).

The player must choose what he is going to wear.

Caeser: Am I looking good Neo?

Felnis: Po!

Augustus: You’re looking good. I’m proud of you.

Then the player is allowed to read Corydon Deus’s vow and try to memorize it. A timer will begin counting down from two minutes.

Corydon Deus Vow: Corydon Deus took the infinite void and shaped it to make order. So he took a man and woman and gave them order. This order between man and woman rests upon marriage. So through this power ordained by Corydon Deus I vow to live and die with this woman he has given me. If I were to break this bow, may Corydon Deus strike me with a curse so that I may be thrown in the Heremus to be ravished by wolves until my carcass is unrecognizable. The children we have from this order will also be dedicated to Corydon Deus. If we do not dedicate our children to Corydon Deus may he strike us with a plague. Even if Gaia shakes and the waters recede, I will give my life to Corydon Deus. This is the vow I have made to Corydon Deus.

(After two minutes)

Augustus: You’ve had enough time to read the vow. Shall we make our way to the temple?

Caeser: Yes, let us go.

Airloft: I shall study the ceremony so that I may understand humanity.

Felnis: Po!

**Reditus Crash Caeser’s Marriage**

All the people of the camp are there for the marriage. The high priest is standing in front of the statue of Corydon Deus. Caeser takes his place to the right of the high priest. The voices in the crowd can be heard speaking. Augustus is behind him and Felnis is among the crowd. Airloft is not there. Some time passes by. Everyone in the crowd starts looking here and there getting impatient for the bride to arrive.

Crowd: Where is the bride? She’s late.

Crowd 2: This can be punished by death if she does this in front of Corydon Deus.

High Priest: (He looks to one of his temple guards.) Go and find………….

(At that moment Theresa burst into the temple).

Crowd: Gasps. That was close.

High Priest: Caeser and Teresa, you have come before this statue of Corydon Deus, who is a representative of the most powerful being in the universe, to become man and wife.  Although magic is no longer with us, I see a faint reminder of magic when a man and a woman come to this temple and proclaim they are man and wife. When Corydon Deus destroyed Gaia, he was purifying its corruption to create order. As you two are marrying here I see a new order, a new creation, made from the old disorder, a purified version of yourselves. Have you two memorized Corydon Deus’s vow? And brought your gifts to exchange?

Caeser: Yes my Lord.

As Theresa: Yes my Lord.

If the player has the Heremus Rose they lose it from their inventory, but if they don’t have the Heremus Rose the player will have to give up one of their most valuable accessories. Theresa will give the player “Theresa’s Ribbon.”

High Priest: Now that you’ve exchanged gifts. I want you to recite Corydon Deus’s vow. Caeser, you will begin first.

Caeser:

1. Corydon Deus took the infinite void and shaped it to make infinite worth. So he took a man and woman and gave them order.
2. Corydon Deus took the infinite void and shaped it to make human pottery. So he took a man and woman and gave them marriage.
3. Corydon Deus took the infinite void and shaped it to make order. So he took a man and woman and gave them order.
4. Corydon Deus took the void and shaped it to make man and woman. So he took a man and woman and gave them order.

Depending on the player’s answers will determine what kind of loot they will get as they are asked about the vow during the battle.

(Airloft bursts in and begins flying around the temple quickly)

Airloft: Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep! Beep!

Augustus: Airloft what is it?

(Airloft leads Augustus outside)

Caeser (Caeser follows behind): What is it father?

Augustus: Oh no. It’s the Reditus. They’re coming. How did they know I’m here? We have to hide everyone below the temple excluding the guards and some of the hunters.

Caeser: Why are they doing this? What did we do? We always do what they say. What did you do father? What you said must be true. You did find Corydon Deus there didn’t you?

Augustus: Now is not the time to speak of these things. We have to get everyone to safety. We must meet the Reditus in the camp for battle and try to protect the temple.

(The high priest comes out)

(An explosion happens nearby)

High Priest: Why are they attacking? They have come for you Augustus I’m sure of it. What have you done?

Augustus (Looking confused): I told you everything.

High Priest: You only spoke of rubbish. Now you will destroy us all!

(All of the temple guards and hunters come out of the temple.)

Temple Guards: What is going on? Oh no! The Reditus are attacking!

High Priest: Augustus killed a Reditus at the Magicius Facility. Now they are coming for revenge.

Augustus: I did no such thing! The Reditus are attacking because Corydon Deus lives inside of me. Do not listen to what this fool has to say. We must band together and repulse the Reditus from our camp.

(Another explosion happens. The music changes to something more upbeat.)

(Theresa comes out of the tent.)

Theresa: This is my wedding day what all you doing out here. We still have to exchange vows. Oh no!

(Another explosion lands close to the party.)

(All the drones in the camp begin swarming around the party. Another shot from the Reditus airship lands where the Rediits are but is deflected by the energy wall put up by the combined efforts of the drones.)

Augustus (He turns to the temple guards): Will you behave like cowards and hand me over to the Reditus or will you stand together with me and fight against them. We have cowered long enough before the Reditus and their demands on how we should live. I will no more this humiliation. Today we put the Reditus in their place and make them return where they came from.

Theresa: They ruined my wedding day. They’re so going to die.

(Theresa joins the party.)

Theresa has three skills:

1.) Medic-automatically uses Med kits when the player reaches 25% health.

2.) Delay buff – Theresa dances with her knife and causes the enemies buff to be delayed for two turns.

3.) Revive – Theresa gives half for HP to revive a deceased player.

Her attacks are weak though. She attacks with a knife.

Temple Guards:  We’re not cowards.  We will stand and fight.  Lead the way Augustus.  If you can survive the Heremus then we can survive this.

Augustus:  High Priest, go in the temple with the women and the children.  Lead them to the hidden passage below and hide there.  This is no place for you.

High Priest:  Augustus, you will pay for your blasphemy.  The Reditus will destroy you all.

(The high priest goes to the temple.)

Theresa:  Caeser, you still have to say the next part of the vow.  I’m getting married today.  Reditus or no Reditus.

(Another explosion hits)

Caeser:

1. This marriage between man and woman rests upon order. So through this marriage ordained by Corydon Deus I vow to live and die with this woman he has given me.
2. This order between man and woman rests upon Corydon Deus.  So through this power given by Corydon Deus, I swear to live and die with this woman he has given to me.
3. This marriage between men and women rests upon order.  So through this concept of marriage given by Corydon Deus long ago, I vow to live and die with this woman he has given me.
4. This order between men and women rests upon marriage.  So through this power ordained by Corydon Deus I vow to live and die with this woman he has given me.

Augustus: Here they come men. Brace yourself!

**Rediit Camp Tactical Battle**

Augustus enters a tactical battle against the Reditus. If the player completed the Mech Wannabe side quest he enters the battle riding a Mech.

The player enters battle against two types of Reditus soldiers:

1.) Spearman Reditus

2.) Reditus Col.

Reditus Col. Attempts to use skills that are very similar to slow spells. They will also attempt to poison your party. Spearman Reditus will use regular attacks, but each attack will be multiple attacks.

Augustus: Lay them to the ground men! Keep your heads up.

Again more groups of enemies attack.

This time some of the Rediits die.

Caeser: Father I don’t know how long we can stand against them.

Theresa: Caeser, if I’m going to die today, I’m going to die married. Caeser say the vow.

Caeser:

1. If I were to break this bow, may Corydon Deus strike me with a curse so that I may be thrown in the Heremus to be ravished by boars until my carcass is unrecognizable. The children we have from this marriage will also be dedicated to Corydon Deus. If we do not dedicate our children to Corydon Deus may he strike us with a disease.
2. If I were to break this vow may Corydon Deus strike me with a curse so that I may be thrown in the Heremus to be ravished by wolves until my carcass is unrecognizable. The children we have from this order will also be dedicated to Corydon Deus. If we do not dedicate our children to Corydon Deus may he strike us with the plague.
3. If we were to break this bow, may Corydon Deus strike us with a curse so that I may be thrown in the Heremus to be ravished by wolves until my carcass is unrecognizable. The children we have from this marriage will also be dedicated to Corydon Deus. If we do not dedicate our children to Corydon Deus may he strike us with the plague.
4. If I were to break this bow, may Corydon Deus strike me with the plague so that I may be thrown in the Heremus to be ravished by boars until my carcass is unrecognizable. The children we have from this order will also be dedicated to Corydon Deus. If we do not dedicate our children to Corydon Deus may he strike me with fire.

Temple guards: It’s the mechanized infantry. We cannot stand against them.

Reditus soldiers riding bipedal robots with guns on the side stand before the Rediits. One man not riding a robot moves in between the mechanized infantry and begins speaking with the Rediits.

Vice Admiral Constantine: Hello Rediits, my name is Vice Admiral Constantine. I command you to lay down your weapons or face immediate destruction. We only want one man and that man’s name is Augustus. He has violated Reditus' property and must answer to justice. Why sacrifice everyone for just one man? Be reasonable. Lay down your arms.

Augustus: (Looks to the temple guards) Shall I surrender men?

Temple Guards: We will die with you!

Augustus: There you have your answer, Vice Admiral Constantine. Do your worst.

Vice Admiral Constantine: Mechanized infantry attack!

The player must now fight a boss named mechanized infantry.

**Mechanized Infantry**

There are two mechanized infantry soldiers the player must fight. The mechanized infantry already have “Speed up” activated when the battle begins. This is similar to haste when the players will be able to use magic. In order to slow the mechanized infantry down the player must use Theresa’s “Delay buff” ability. The mechanized infantry will attack with “Mechanized charge “which will attack your entire party. If you have enough Medkits you will be able to survive this attack. The Mechanized Infantry are weak against shock attacks.

After the battle most of the Rediit temple guards are dead. More mechanized infantry show up.

Augustus: We must retreat to the temple.

The drones scatter and what is remaining of the Rediit army withdraws into the temple. The temple is empty now. All the women and children are hiding in the temple’s basement.

Augustus: Close the door.Bolt itshut.

Caeser: What are we going to do father? We can’t possibly withstand their assault. This next battle will be our last.

Theresa: Caeser the next line of our vow. Say it in front of the Corydon Deus statue so I can die married to you.

Corydon Deus: Augustus, let them come. I have something for them.

Caeser:

1.) This is the oath I have made to Corydon Deus. Even if Gaia shakes and the waters evaporate, I will give my wife to Corydon Deus.

2.) This is the promise I have made to Corydon Deus. Even if Gaia shakes and the waters flood, I will give my children to Corydon Deus.

3.) These are the words I have promised to Corydon Deus. Even if Gaia shakes and the waters boil, I will give my money to Corydon Deus.

4.) This is the vow I have made to Corydon Deus.  Even if Gaia shakes and the waters recede, I will give my life to Corydon Deus.

(The Reditus Soldiers begin hitting the door of the temple until it bursts open and mechanized infantry rush in.)

Theresa: It was nice knowing you Caeser. At least we can finally call ourselves husband and wife and die together.

Caeser: It was short and sweet my love.

Augustus: It’s not over yet. Corydon Deus will deliver us.

(Vice Adm. Constantine enters the temple.)

Vice Adm. Constantine: You have one more chance to surrender. What shall it be, life or death?

Theresa: Death!

Vice Adm. Constantine: Charge! Die Insolent fools!

The battle begins and an eerie music starts playing.

Augustus: What is happening to me? I feel like I am going to explode!

(The party disappears and Corydon Deus summoned in their place)

Mechanized Infantry: What is this? Let’s get out of here!

Vice Admiral Constantine: Stand your ground fools or I will kill you myself!

(The mechanized infantry begin attacking Corydon Deus, but they hardly do any damage.)

Corydon Deus: You have defiled my temple you fools with your unholy presence! Die, die, die, die, you will feel my wrath.

(Corydon Deus casts “Goner,” which wipes out the entire mechanized infantry group in one blow.)

Vice Admiral Constantine: What is this? What? Reinforcements!

(More mechanized infantry show up again to charge the party. The battle begins the same way as the previous one did.)

Corydon Deus:   Why do you cling to life, knowing that you must die? Your efforts are futile. You will die for nothing! (Corydon Deus casts Ultima. The mechanized infantry is wiped out.)

Vice Adm. Constantine: Everyone retreat. Fall back to the airships. I will return with weaponry that even the gods can’t fathom.

(The Reditus are gone.)

Augustus collapses on the ground.

Caeser: Theresa help me carry him.

(The screen fades out and everything is black.)

Augustus: Where am I?

The player can now walk around, but wherever they walk there is just blackness and emptiness. After some time a voice can be heard from the darkness.

Corydon Deus: Welcome to my reality. We are now one. Slowly I will become you and you will become me. We will become a new creation. There will be parts of you and parts of me. It will be beautiful, a beautiful disaster. (Corydon Deus begins laughing.)

Augustus: I feel so much hate.

Corydon Deus: Because I am hate personified.

Augustus: The priest told us that you are a loving God.

Corydon Deus: I am love and I love to hate. You are my chosen vessel. We will again bring this world to its knees.

Augustus: What about the good people of the world, what will happen to them?

Corydon Deus: Even the good ones must die!

Augustus: No, no, no, this can’t be. Have we been lied to this entire time?

Corydon Deus: Yes and now there is nothing you can do about it. You will now behave and act as I will and you will fulfill the purpose I have planned for you.

Augustus: You won’t get away with this. My son will stop you.

Corydon Deus: I’m a god and I will get away with anything I want.

(Fadeout)

(Augustus wakes up. Caeser and Theresa are sitting in Augustus’ tent.)

Caeser: He’s awake!

Theresa: Here take some water.

Caeser: What happened in the temple?

Augustus: Corydon Deus used the power of my spirit to summon himself into this world.

Caeser: I saw him. He hovered in the air above us and completely destroyed the Reditus. I felt such immense power. It was nothing I ever felt before my entire life.

Augustus: See, I told you magic is back.

Caeser: What will we do now? The Reditus will be back and I don’t think you can survive another battle.

Augustus: First, gather all the people I have an announcement to make. We must move this camp to safety.

(The screen fades out and fades in again and all the camp people have gathered around Augustus)

If you completed Desert Rose quest,

Augustus: As you all know we are in grave danger. The Reditus are after me which means they are after you. Do not fret, do not be dismayed, on our journey into the Heremus we discovered a place with good water supply so we can feed our cattle. We will immediately move our camp to that location and start anew. I will not accompany you there for I have other more important work to do, but I’ve notified the chief Hunter as to its location. Thank you all for standing with me in the face of such great adversity. Corydon Deus will reward you all greatly when he is done transforming the world.

Camp people: How great is Corydon Deus! He has finally delivered us from our troubles!

Augustus (Looks at Caeser and begins to quietly speak): First things first we have to purge this camp of that wicked priest. He was the one who notified Reditus of my presence here.

Caeser: How do you know it was the priest?

Augustus: Corydon Deus saw a dove leave the high priest tent shortly after I left.

If you didn’t complete the Desert Rose quest,

Augustus: As you all know we are in grave danger. The Reditus are after me which means they are after you. Do not fret, do not be dismayed, I will use the power of Corydon Deus to try to deepen the wells so that we may have more water and can feed our cattle. Thank you all for standing with me in the face of such great adversity. I must leave you soon, but do not worry Corydon Deus will be with you.

Augustus (Looks at Caeser and begins to quietly speak): First things first we have to purge this camp of that wicked priest. He was the one who notified Reditus of my presence here.

Caeser: How do you know it was the priest?

Augustus: Corydon Deus saw a dove leave the high priest tent shortly after I left.

**Rediit Camp after Corydon Deus**

Billy: I heard Corydon Deus destroyed the Reditus with an awesome magic spell. Can you ask Corydon Deus to kill Tommy’s dad? I saw him looking at my mom again.

Tommy: My dad’s going to marry Billy’s mother. How strange is that? Can you ask Corydon Deus if it’s okay if I still date Billy’s sister?

Billy’s sister: I wish I was there to see Corydon Deus destroy all the Reditus. Must’ve been a beautiful sight, wasn't it? Can you ask Corydon Deus to stop my mother from marrying Billy’s dad? It would just be weird if we started dating.

Seer: It has begun. Corydon Deus will now purify the world. What exciting times.

Widow: Corydon Deus has been revived. How happy my husband would be if he was still alive today.

Childless Husband: Hurry up and make children Caeser.

Childless Wife: I can’t wait to see your children. They’ll be absolutely gorgeous.

Herdsman: Hopefully my cattle can survive now.

Herdsman wife: He still makes armor at night even with the water supply problem solved. Can you cast a spell on him so he forgets how to make armor.

Lone Temple Guard: Most of us died fighting the Reditus. But now there is no need to walk in front of the Corydon Deus statue. We know now that he lives inside of you.

Temple Pianist: Can you ask Corydon Deus how he likes this music?

Augustus: Corydon Deus thinks the music is absolutely outstanding.

Temple Pianist: Then I will play harder until my fingers bleed.

Chief Hunter: I barely survived the fight with the Reditus. If Corydon Deus hadn't fought for us I would be dead.

Newly Married Husband: You must attack the Reditus and get revenge for what they brought upon our camp. You must take the fight to them or again they will return.

Augustus: Yes, that is what we are planning.

Newly Married Wife: Things are looking up now. We have started planning to have children.

Augustus: That’s wonderful. Corydon Deus will be pleased to have your children dedicated to him.

Great Father: All my children gave their weapons to you I see. I hope they are of use to you and will eventually bring us a great victory.

Bountiful Wife: Thanks for taking my children’s weapons. I disagreed with his decision to have them hunt at such an early age. We were just so anxious about how to provide for them with the things the way they were, but now they are looking up.

Child who gave all savings: I hope my money bought you the things you need. Go kill those Reditus.

Child who gave his sword: You can keep the sword. I know you are a true warrior who can defeat the Reditus and bring back magic.

Child who shot a hole in the tent: We fixed the hole in the tent. I lied and told my parents that an animal chewed its way in. I could never tell them I almost shot my eye out.

Child who gave his shotgun ammo: Can you give me back that ammo? I want to kill some Reditus now I don’t have ammo. Nevermind, you keep it. I know it’s in better hands.

Girl who gave her bow: I’ve grown a little bit since you’ve gone. I’m taller than my bow now.

Girl by the well if you told her the truth: You really hurt the Reditus. I heard they ran like cowards when Corydon Deus went out to fight against them. Our prayers have been answered.

Theresa’s Father:  When you recited that vow you truly showed how much you love my daughter.  (Depending how many you answered determines your reward.)

1/4.)

2/4.)

3/4.)

4/4.)

**High Priest Death**

Augustus enters the high priest tent. The high priest begins rambling.

High Priest: Praise Corydon Deus you're safe! I’m so happy you defeated the Reditus. I could hear the fighting from underneath the temple. It sounded as if we were surely goners.

Augustus: You lie priest. We know you notified the Reditus of my return. They attacked because of you. Many good men died because of your selfishness. You’re scared of the true power living inside of me because it’s from the true god that we worship. You don’t want to lose your power over the people and have gladly sent men to their death in the Heremus. You knew they wouldn’t succeed, but now someone has and you are afraid. Today you will die.

High Priest: No I can explain. The Reditus threatened my life if I did not send men into the Heremus. They wanted assurance that our population would not grow in exchange for allowing us to live here.

Augustus: That does not matter now. You loved power and not his people. You have shown your disbelief in Corydon Deus and the punishment for that is death.

Caeser: Wait father. Let us have a trial in the temple where the entire camp will decide his fate.

Augustus: Corydon Deus is already spoken.

High Priest: No wait please!

Augustus sets the priest on fire with magic.

High Priest: You do not know the truth about the god we worship. Now you will see. Ahhhhhhhhhh!

(Caeser looks away while the priest is burning. The priest is dead.)

Caeser: He said, “You don’t know the truth about the god we worship,” what does he mean by that?  Father, it is time we read the Annals of Time. I want to know the truth about the god we worship.

Augustus: There is time for that tomorrow now we must make a plan to fight the Reditus. We will sit and read it together. Meet me in the temple, all of you. As acting High Priest I have some work to do.

Caeser: See you there father.

After everyone has left Augustus turns to the Annals of Time.

Augustus: Let us see what this book has to say.

(Augustus begins reading through the Annals of Time.)

Corydon Deus: Set it on fire.

Augustus: No, everyone must know the truth about you.

Corydon Deus: Set it on fire you have no choice.

Augustus: No, I must resist.

Corydon Deus: You cannot, now set it on fire slave.

(Augustus sets it on fire)

**Temple of Corydon Deus Planning**

Augustus, Caeser, Theresa, Felnis, and Airloft are in the temple.

Augustus: I have read the Annals of Time and I’ve decided that we must go to the land of the Fabricius. Once we are there we must hunt the Fabricius and obtain their Magicia. The gate that once existed on land was buried during the first purification. Now it lies underwater.

Caeser: How will we go underwater? The only people that have technology to be able to do that are the Reditus.

Augustus: We will have to sneak into Tonsorem and steal a water ship.

Caeser: The only way off the continent is through Albrook. Albrook is heavily guarded by the Reditus. How will we sneak in there?

Augustus: We will take uniforms from some of the deceased Reditus and pretend to be Reditus soldiers. Once we’re inside we will try to sneak on a frigate that goes into the mainland.

Caeser: Security will be tight.

Augustus: I know that’s why I’m going to ask Felnis not to come with us.

Neo V: Po! Po!

Caeser: Don’t worry Felnis I will come back for you.

(Everyone leaves except Caeser.)

Caeser: Father now can we read the Annals of Time.

Augustus: I set it on fire.

Caeser: What!?

Augustus: We cannot allow that book to get into the hands of the Reditus. They will use it to slander our god. They would not understand the things it speaks of.

Caeser: I want to understand. I want to know what it says.

Augustus: Corydon Deus lives inside of me. All you need to know is right in front of you.

Caeser: Your acting strange lately father. Let it be. We have a long journey ahead of us

**Heremus Checkpoint**

Reditus soldier: Halt who goes there!

Augustus: We’re survivors from the camp massacre. We played dead until no one was looking then we ran from the Rediit camp.

(The Reditus soldier looks at his commander, says something, then looks at you)

Reditus soldier: Come on in.

Reditus commander: Report to the barracks and afterwards I’ll give you your briefing.

(Augustus and party can now leave the Heremus and travel into the open world)

**The Road to Albrook**

Caeser: Father, I want to see this continent before leaving it. Theresa and I can’t have a honeymoon, but at least allow us to have just a little bit of fun. I heard Zen is the party capital of the Southern Continent. If the player attempts to enter Hamilton first Caeser will say,

Caeser: Father, this is Hamilton. I want to see Hamilton, but not yet. I heard Zen is a happening place to be.

Augustus: Sure, who knows we might meet someone who can help us along the way.

When leaving the camp the party enters the overworld screen and is allowed to travel the entire southern continent.  There are three cities on the southern continent: Zen, Melbrook, and Hamilton. If the player chooses to enter the Heremus again they will enter a fast travel screen where they can quickly jump to different parts of the Heremus.

**Enemies on Overworld Map**

1.) Road Bandit.

2.) Rabid Rabbit.

3.) Venus Man Trap.

4.) Bandit Leader.

**Zen**

**The People of Zen**

Zen Guard 1: Reditus soldiers are always welcome here. I wasn’t notified that a contingent of Reditus soldiers would arrive today.

Caeser: This is a surprise visit. We’re actually on R&R. We were told that Zen is a happening place to be.

Zen Guard 2: This is true! This is the party capital of the southern continent. Enjoy yourselves!

Zen Guard 1: We were told to be on alert for Rediits.  If you haven’t heard the Admiral has issued orders that Rediits not be allowed in.  You can smell a Rediit from a 1000 stadia away. So if you see any Rediit activities please notify us so that we can take care of it. Enjoy your R&R!

Alfonso’s guard: This home is off limits to any visitors, please go away.

Augustus: We’ll be on the lookout. Thanks gentlemen.

Merchant: Most goods flow from Albrook to the rest of the continent. I often travel to the Reditus heartland in search of goods to sell here in the Badlands. The Reditus still have disdain for us because our parents fought in the Magicius War for the Rediits.

Shop owner: I sell the finest goods from the mainland. Take a look.

1.) Rabite Veal.

2.) Leg of Felnis.

3.) Catsuey.

4.) Cheese of Goopow

Newspaper Kid: Read all about it! Reditus soldiers defeated at Rediit Camp!

Gossip Auntie: If the Reditus were defeated by the Rediits, are we in danger too?

Gossip Auntie2: My sister lives in Tandoor. If things get too out of hand I may go stay with her.

**Inn**

Bartender: Long live the Reditus. Welcome to my bar. If you want something to drink just tell me. If you want other pleasures that also can be arranged also.

Stephen: Welcome to my bar can I get you a room? It’s only 5G.

Girls dancing on stage: The pay here’s double than it is in other cities.

Filthy Guard: Shake it girl, I love the way you dance. Look at that junk in that trunk!

Man on barstool: Reditus. We heard you had your asses handed to you by the Rediits. How is this possible?

Man on barstool:  I’ll have another please…hiccup.

Waitress:  Ohhhh……Reditus soldiers.  Talk to me later if you want to have some fun.

Theresa: Don’t even think about it Caeser. I saw you looking at her.

Caeser: How can I not look at her when she was talking to us?

Theresa: All men are the same I know.

Merchant: Tonsorem is talking about declaring war on Kohlingen.  Damn fools fighting each other.  How will this affect my business?

**Jester and Ali Botta**

(When the party leaves the bar a thief runs by and steals their money and accessories. Augustus and his party attempt to chase the thief.)

Augustus: Guards stop that thief!

(The guards attempt to catch the thief but he is too quick for them.)

If the player attempts to leave the town and chase the thief there is nowhere for them to go. They must inquire around the town about the whereabouts of the thief.

Zen Guard1: That thief is a very famous thief. We tried many times to catch him, but he was too fast for us.

Zen Guard2: That thief has a hideout somewhere, but we are unable to find it. You might try asking around town. We’ve asked around but nobody seems to tell us anything. We think he has the support of the town.

**Thief’s Family Home**

Corydon Deus: This is the home of the thief.

Thief’s Mother: So you’re looking for that thief, huh? We don’t know anything here. I suggest you leave my home.

There is a small child in a cradle. She’s moving from the kitchen to the child.

If you talk to the thief’s mother again she will get more hostile.

Thief’s Mother: I suggest you leave my home now. I’ll tell the guards you were sexually harassing me. What right do you have to come to my home anyways? Do you normally just walk into people’s homes? Get out of here you filthy lot.

(Augustus leaves the home.)

Augustus: She’s hiding the thief. I can smell it.

Caeser: She was acting very defensive. Something is definitely up. I suggest we come back at night and wait outside her home to see if that thief shows up.

Theresa: I agree. I think that thief steals and gives it to his family.

Augustus must go to the Inn and wake up in the middle of the night. When you wake up in the middle of the night and leave the Inn the party sees the thief walking into the home where they suspect he lives. Augustus moves to an open window and listens in to hear what they are saying inside the house.

Thief’s Mother: Some people were here today snooping around. Eventually you’re going to get caught. I appreciate your help around here, but this can’t go on forever.

Thief: I do what I can mother. Even if they catch me I don’t care. I’ll do this as long as I can so that we can survive.

Thief’s Mother: If only your worthless father would support us, but all he does is spend his money on the whores in Albrook.

Thief: Don’t worry, they won’t catch us as long as they can’t find my hideout.

Thief’s Mother: It’s time to get out here. You could’ve been followed.

Thief: I’ll see you soon mother. Love you.

Thief’s Mother: Don’t be a fool like your father. Your sins will catch up with you. Take care.

(Augustus and his party quickly hide to avoid the thief. This time a thief takes a different way out of town. The thief goes behind his home and puts is a switch that opens the stairwell leading into the ground and goes inside. Once the thief is gone, Augustus follows him, pushes the switch, and goes down the stairs.)

**Thief’s Cave**

**Enemies of Thieves Cave**

1. Vampire Bat.
2. Wererat.
3. Ali Baba.
4. Wall Genie
5. Falling Stalagmite

The cave is littered with traps which will take half your party's HP or poison everyone in your party. Trap names:

1. Poison needle.
2. Foot Trap.

Finally Augustus' party reaches the thief. He’s sleeping. Augustus party accidentally steps on a trap which causes several flying arrows to come out at the party. Augustus casts fire which incinerates the arrows in midair. The thief wakes up.

Thief: So you thought you’d catch me. You’ve made the biggest mistake of your life. Just because I’m a thief doesn’t mean I’m all brawn and no brains. He flips another switch. A giant robot comes out of the wall. I earn a lot of money doing thievery so I bought myself a nice bot. Ali Botta, take care of them.

**Ali Botta and the Mysterious Thief Boss**

Ali Botta is an incredibly fast robot which fights alongside the mysterious thief. The mysterious thief will activate “overdrive” in Ali Botta which makes Ali Botta almost impossible to hit and allows Ali Botta two attacks instead of one per turn. Theresa should use delay buff on Ali Botta while the party focuses its attacks on the mysterious thief. The mysterious thief will try to confuse your party and steal whatever Medkits that your party has acquired so you cannot heal yourself. Ali Botta is weak against Augustus “Bolt” magic. If Augustus uses magic the mysterious thief will say,

Mysterious Thief: Wow! You just used magic. I guess I’m not the only one with some tricks up my sleeve. Use it again. I want to see it again, that was amazing.

If Augustus uses magic again,

Mysterious Thief: I thought magic was dead. Who are you?

(The party defeats Ali Botta and the mysterious thief.)

Mysterious Thief: I’ll get back your stuff just don’t hurt me anymore.

Caeser: You’re good at sneaking into places, right?

Mysterious Thief: I’m good at a lot of things so what’s it to you.

Augustus: I see where you’re coming from Caeser. We might need his help getting in the Albrook and not getting caught.

Mysterious Thief: Aren’t you Reditus soldiers anyways?

Caeser: Should we tell him?

Augustus: Why not? Nobody will believe a thief anyways? Besides, we both have something to hide. We might be able to help each other.

Caeser: We’re Rediits.

Mysterious Thief: I don’t care what you are. What’s in it for me?

Augustus: We won’t tell the authorities about your hideout. Plus, if you come with us, whatever booty you can steal along the way is yours. You know the main continent is rife with booty.

Mysterious Thief: I love booty. It’s my dream to buy a home for my mother in Albrook and get out of this filthy place. If it wasn’t for my thievery my mother would have to do prostitute work and that’s the last thing I want in this world. I’m in. Just wait one day so I can repair Ali Botta and then we’ll be on our way. My name is Jester Cole. It’s a pleasure to meet you. He turns to Theresa. And it’s especially a pleasure to meet you.

Theresa: Hehe.

Caeser (Cough): We’re newly married. It’s a pleasure to meet you.

Jester: Oh, (He blushes) looking forward to doing business with you.

(Jester joins the party)

**Jester Skills**

Attacks with knives and has high agility.

1. Steal-steals items from enemies
2. Ali Botta- a robot who fights for the party.  Can be used occasionally.  Will recharge between uses.
3. Deceive-creates an illusion of a single person of the party which will allow them to dodge attacks.
4. During open world exploring the player can now unlock locked chests.

(The party wakes up in the morning.)

Augustus: I bought a couple of uniforms just in case. Here take this.

Jester: So you get a plan on how to get into Albrook without them knowing that you’re Rediits? I’m sure your posters are everywhere. Everyone knows what happened but not exactly how. How did you manage to defeat the Reditus' best soldiers?

Augustus: In time you will find out. Our plan was to wear these uniforms and hope that it allows us to pass through the checkpoint into Albrook.

Jester: What are you gonna do when they ask for your ID? Forget the uniforms, they’ll just draw attention to yourselves. Those uniforms will work in Zen and Hamilton, but not in Albrook. I’ll get you in.

Augustus: So what’s your plan?

Jester: I make a diversion and you sneak inside.

Augustus: What kind of diversion?

Jester: I got a friend in Hamilton who owes me a favor so we go there first then we go to Albrook. Understand? You get to watch some of my magic. I’m not the only one who can do tricks.

Augustus: All right, Hamilton it is.

(Caeser pulls Augustus aside.)

Caeser: Are you sure you can trust this guy's father?

Augustus: I think he smells profit. I don’t think he’d turn down a chance for good booty. And I intend to help him towards that goal as much as I can.

(The player will now be able to steal from NPC’s on the map, but the player should be careful, if they are caught too many times they will be arrested and half their money will be taken away.)

**Hamilton**

**People of Hamilton**

(The player can enter Hamilton before they meet Jester. The only difference is if they enter Hamilton with Jester story events will begin.)

Hamilton Guard 1: You must be looking for Rediits. The coast is clear here. We haven’t seen any Rediits attempt to enter our city since your defeat at their camp. We still can’t figure out how a bunch of sheepherders and goat bangers managed to best the top army in the world.

Hamilton Guard 2: Yes, it still behooves me. Are you sure you men weren’t busy at the brothels the night before drinking up all the liquor in Ehsran. It must’ve been your hangovers that led to your defeat. Don’t worry the mayor here is still loyal to your cause. We still haven’t forgotten what the Rediits did to our great great grandfathers.

Augustus: We underestimated their strength. They’re more than just sheepherders and goat bangers. They are great warriors who used tactics we’ve never seen before. You should be afraid of them because they are coming.

Hamilton Guard 1: I’m shaking like a barefoot whore in the coldest winter of Ehsran. I heard they had this huge statue of their god which they walk around all goddamn day. Sounds like a bunch of crazies. If I’m gonna walk around something all day it better have big kitties and a nice ass.

Hamilton Guard 2: Hell yes.

Augustus (Is getting frustrated): Their god is real, we saw it that day. He went out before them and destroyed some of our strongest soldiers.

Hamilton Guard 1: Enough talk to these crazy Rediits. Get on into Hamilton and do your business. Our shops sell some unique combat items that might help you on your way. Welcome to Hamilton gentlemen.

Lady on the street: I’m saving money to go to Albrook. I want to get off this horrible continent and away from those horrible Rediits. This has to be the most backwards place in all of Gaia.

Man on the street: My son just enlisted with the Reditus. I hope he’s okay after their defeat at the Rediit Camp.

Trader: I’ll trade you one medkit for a Rabid Rabbit Skin.

Woman cooking and home: How can those people survive in the Heremus? That place has been devoid of life since the Magicius Wars. It’s a shame we have to share the same continent with these people. The Reditus should have wiped them out when they had the chance.

Woman cooking and home husband: Well, with the war between Tonsorem and Kohlingen brewing in the Rediits on the rise. The world is looking more dangerous than it ever has before. I think I’ll send my child to the mainland for education.

Woman cooking and home child: I don’t want to study in the mainland. All my friends are here. Rediits or not, I’m staying here.

Shop owner: Reditus soldiers, finally I’ll get some good business.

Bartender: My bar is not as happening as the one in Zen, but we have a good selection of beer for you to try. First one is on the house. Which one would you like?

1. Business Bright
2. Felnis’s Plague
3. Crystal Corydon Deus
4. White Knight
5. Cid’s Special

Waitress: I put in papers to become a waitress in Albrook, but I’m still waiting for their approval.

Man sitting at a bar: The bartender brews his own beer. It’s the best in the Southern Continent.

Armorer: We make weapons and armor and sell it at a wholesale rate to Ehsran. What would you like? Since you’re Reditus soldiers I will give you a discount.

Man sitting on a bench in the street: I heard in Tandoor they have a racing track where you can gamble on Kwehs. I wouldn’t mind going and seeing that but I can’t get proper papers to get into Albrook. Hey, you’re Reditus soldiers. You think you can help me to get papers so they’ll let me into Albrook? I’ll pay whatever you like.

If yes, Jester: Yeah we can arrange those papers let me talk to my superior. But I need payment upfront.

Man sitting on a bench in the street: Yeah sure, here. (Player receives 100 G.)

(As Augustus is walking away.) Augustus: Happy?

Jester: 50 is yours and 50 is mine. Without your Reditus uniform my scam was doomed to fail.

If no, Augustus: Sir, I believe you should quit gambling and focus on your family.

Man sitting on a bench in the street: Yeah you’re right. I just wish I could get some easy money so I could buy a home quickly. I don’t like to work.

**Shady Man’s Fight Club**

Shady Man: Well look with the Kwehs dragged in. If it isn’t Jester, the scam man of the Southern Lands. What shady work you got for me now?

Jester: I just came to see how you’re doing.

Shady Man: Bull shit. Since when did you give a shit about me? And what the hell are you doing in a Reditus uniform?

Jester: This is the perfect scam man. You don’t know how many people are willing to give you anything if they see you in a Reditus uniform. People will die to get into the main continent.

Shady Man: And who are your friends?

Jester: And since when do you give a damn who I work with?

Shady Man: You’re right. So what do you want?

Jester: I want papers to get into Albrook and a ticket to a ship that goes to the mainland.

Shady Man: That’s an expensive proposition you have for me.

Jester: You’re the man who can do it, right?

Shady Man: For the right price. 100,000 G.

Augustus: Is he mad?

Jester: I got this. We don’t have 100,000 G. Maybe we can offer you services in its place?

Shady Man: Maybe you can. Are your friends good at fighting? My boss runs an underground fight club. Who among you is the strongest?

Caeser: I am.

Theresa: Don’t you dare.

Shady Man: You enter and fight for me and you win. I’ll arrange papers and a ticket for you, deal?

Caeser: How many times do I have to win?

Shady Man: Until they crown you champion. Remember this is no holds bar type of fighting. The champion, “Killer Mad Dog Felnis” will do whatever it takes to win. Last bout he bit off a man’s ear.

Theresa: What has gotten into you?

Caeser: I got this, we need those papers.

Augustus: You can win this I know. Corydon Deus is with you.

Shady Man:  You’re Rediits.  O my Jester, you really got yourself in some deep shit now.  Regardless, a deal is a deal no matter who it’s with.  Are you in?

Caeser: I’m in. When do I fight?

Shady Man: Tomorrow night. We always fight on a full moon. We believe the moon goddess gives us luck, not some dead god who destroyed the world. Let’s see if Corydon Deus can help you when “Killer Mad Dog Felnis” gets a hold of your ear. First things first, you need to change your clothes. I can’t have wannabe Reditus soldiers walking around in my bosses’ fight club. Until then stay at the inn.  I’ll send a girl with clothes so you can change. See you tomorrow.

(The player must leave and stay at the inn for the fight to begin tomorrow)

Corydon Deus: Augustus, you will quietly cast magic while Caeser is fighting to help him, but only magic that strengthens him.

(Augustus learns haste.)

Theresa: You take care of yourself there. We didn’t come all this way so you can die on our honeymoon.

(When the player is ready to fight they must go to the inn and rest.)

Caeser will be without his armor and weapons fighting bare handed. The player must fight many fights in order to get to Killer Mad Dog Felnis. The first contestant, Little Mac, walks in the arena with a rose in his mouth. Then he throws it out of his mouth and does a funny dance. The second contestant, whose name is Albrook Bully, says this before the fight,

Albrook Bully: Ooooh! I’m crazy! I’m going to kill you!

(The player is allowed to take a break and will wait in the restroom. Everyone is there so you can talk to them.)

Augustus: You’re doing a good job Caeser. Keep it up. Is it me or are you moving faster?

Caeser: I am, aren’t I?

Augustus: Have you been working out?

Caeser: No, I just feel the sudden rush of energy every new fight. It’s amazing I never felt anything like it in my life.

Augustus: Keep it up.

Theresa: Let me put ice on those bruises. (Theresa goes up and takes ice and comes back and puts it on Caeser's face.)

Caeser: Ouch! That hurts!

Theresa: You really paid attention to our Rediit fight training when we were younger. I just did enough to pass.

Caeser: I enjoy fighting. It was the only thing that I excelled at in camp. I even felt subpar at repairing drones. Dad always shouted at me because I always made mistakes. It’s our tradition to take the trade of our father, but I can never be an engineer like him.

Augustus: You weren’t that bad. A little bit of time and you’d be a fine engineer.

Caeser: But here I am fighting in the arena in Reditus held territory. Who’d have thought?

Jester: Enough talk. You gotta get your mind in the game. You’re just one fighter away from fighting Killer Mad Dog Felnis. The next fighter is no joke. He won’t bite your ear off, but he’ll go for your gut and try to make you vomit. So do something when you think he’s going for your gut.

Caeser: I got this. I got it.

Jester: You can do this. You can do it.

Shady Man: (Walks into the locker room.) You’re up Caeser. Go out there and make me some money.

(When Caeser walks out there is a large crowd now compared to before when there were a few people. Augustus walks into the fighting pit and so does Albrook Bully. Shady Man comes out.)

Shady Man: Here we have two great fighters The Waste…….the Heremus Masher and the Albrook Bully. Are you ready to rumble? Then let’s get it on.

**Albrook Bully Boss**

Albrook Bully's face gets red before he attempts to hit you in the stomach. If the player allows Albrook Bully to hit them in the stomach, Caeser will remain stunned for two turns. If the player wishes to survive they must defend as soon as they see Albrook Bully’s face go red. Without the help of Augustus’ spells you cannot defeat Albrook Bully and combat.

(After defeating Albrook Bully.)

Shady Man: 1……2……..3……4……..5……..6……..7………8………..9………10

We have our winner, Caeser!

Theresa: (She passes out. Augustus stands behind her to catch her.)

Augustus: He survived, you'll be alright.

Shady Man: Everyone join us tomorrow for the final between Killer Mad Dog Felnis and the Heremus Masher.

(The screen fades out and the party is in the inn.)

Theresa: I knew you could do it Caeser.

Augustus: I’m proud of you.

Jester: I knew you could do it. I could see it in your eyes. This heist isn’t over yet.

Caeser: Heist?

Jester: Yeah I said heist. I gotta a guy who will not only give you a ticket to get to the mainland, but also throw in an extra 10,000 G for you just to throw the match. Anyways, you’re not a career fighter. If you were to be Killer Mad Dog Felnis it would ruin his career. You just want to get to the mainland and be out of here. So think about it.

Caeser: Throw the match. What if he bites off my ear?

Jester: Don’t worry; Killer Mad Dog Felnis is in on it too. He works for the same guy.

Caeser: And Shady Man? What if he tries to kill me for losing the match?

Jester: Shady Man gets paid by the same man. It’s all fixed. And I get a finder’s fee too. Everyone comes out happy. So you ready. You’re ready to throw the match?

Caeser: I don’t know father, what should I do?

Augustus: We are just passing through. I’d hate to make enemies along the way. Enemies that necessarily don’t want to harm us. It’s up to you.

(Throw the match or fight it out?)

(If the player chooses to fight it out Augustus will try to convince him otherwise)

Augustus: You’re strong headed just like your mother, but there’s a time to fight to win and there’s a time when it’s just okay to lose. One must know the battles they must flee from.

(Every time the player chooses fight it out Augustus comment will loop)

**Throw the match**

Caeser: The extra money will be good. I don’t want to make a career out of fighting. I’m just following my father and doing what he thinks is right. Killer Mad Dog Felnis better not bite off my ear.

Jester: Don’t worry. Your ear is safe and sound. Remember you still have to fight. You have to make the crowd believe you’re not throwing the match. So you have to hit Killer Mad Dog Felnis, but don’t knock him out.

Caeser: Sounds easy enough let’s do it.

Jester: Another thing. Killer Mad Dog Felnis gets crazy in the ring and he might get out of control. So make sure to fight in such a way that you don’t raise his aggression. If you raise his aggression too high he might bite off your ear.

Theresa: Oh no! I can’t have you ignoring me.

Caeser: Well, I guess not having an extra ear might come with some perk benefits.

Theresa: Don’t talk to me.  Hmph!

Jester: Well that settles it. I’ll see you bright and early tomorrow. Good night Augustus.

Augustus: Good night Jester.

(The next day the fighting hall is completely packed with all types of people shouting and hollering. Caeser walks into the fighting hall and the crowd can be heard saying things about him.)

Crowd: They say he’s from the Heremus.

Crowd: I wonder if he’s a Rediit?

Crowd: I’ve never seen a fighter like him; the way he moves. I wonder if he can beat the champ.

(Killer Mad Dog Felnis walks into the fighting hall. The crowd starts chanting his name.)

Crowd: Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis!

The Shady Man: Ladies and Gentlemen! In the one corner we have a man of mystery. A swift breeze of the Heremus. A fighter who suddenly caught us all by surprise. The one, the only, Heremus Masher. In the other corner. (The chanting gets louder.) In the other corner, the only man here with a collection of ears. The man who’s a Wolfpack of one. The killer, the mad, Dog Felnis. (The crowd goes crazy.)

Crowd: Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis!

(Caeser and Killer Mad Dog Felnis face each other in the center of the ring.)

Shady Man: Get it on!

(The battle begins.)

**KMDM Mini Game Battle**

There is a red bar on the left-hand side which represents KMDM aggression. The player should not keep attacking KMDM or the bar will keep rising. The player will lose if the bar reaches all the way up. The player must defend and allow the bar to go down. The player will also take damage while defending. In order to keep from dying the player must push a certain button at the end of each KMDM’s punch in order to halve the damage. There is a bar on the right-hand side which represents the crowd’s belief. If the player does not attack enough the bar will go down and the player will lose.

(When the player has fought like this for long enough the screen will switch from battle mode to overhead view mode. Killer Mad Dog Felnis will wind up and take a punch at Caeser and Caeser will fall back on the mat.)

Shady Man: 1…..2…..3…..4…..5…..6…..7……8…..9…..10 and our winner is Killer Mad Dog Felnis! The champion reigns.

(The crowd goes wild. They begin chanting the champion’s name.)

(Two guys rush onto the mat and carry Caeser into the locker room. Augustus, Theresa, and Jester are there.)

Caeser: How did I do?

Jester: Great! We’re rich!

(Shady Man walks in)

Shady Man: That was a great show you put on out there Caeser. You definitely earned your ticket to the mainland, all of you.

Jester: What about the extra 10,000 G you promised us if he threw the match?

Shady Man: You’re lucky the boss doesn’t report these people to Reditus. There’s a bounty on one of their heads worth twice that. Since the boss is a very gracious boss, he’ll let these people go.

Jester: You lying, cheating, no good for nothing piece of, I oughta...

Augustus: Jester just let it go there will be plenty of booty on the mainland. Just keep your cool.

Shady Man: But to show you there’s no hard feeling, here take this.

( Player receives 100 G)

Shady Man: That’s for your finder’s fee Jester.  Hehehe…. (He throws the money on the ground.)

Jester: You’ll get what’s coming to you. I won’t forget this.

Shady Man: We’re just doing business; don’t take it personal, you know how it is. Sometimes you win some, sometimes you lose some. Your boat leaves tomorrow. I suggest you be there and bright and early for it. The boss will not issue another ticket for you.

Caeser: I want a rematch.

Shady Man: A rematch?

Caeser: Yeah, you heard me, a rematch. But this time the stakes are different. If I lose this time you own me.

Shady Man: As a slave? Sure, the boss will be delighted to hear he owns somebody now. He already owns more than half the continent. Deal.

Theresa: What are you doing, we got what we want, now let’s go.

Caeser: I’ve disgraced myself by taking the easy way; for conscience sake I must do this.

Augustus: I support your decision Caeser. At the end of the day it’s you who have to live with you. If your conscience is panging then I suggest you do what you think is right.

Shady Man: See you in the ring.

**Fight for Honor**

(Next day before the fight Caeser is getting ready in the locker room.)

Jester: You’re a brave man Caeser. Very few people fight for honor these days. You sure are a rare breed. Are you sure you want to do this? They already cheated us once, are you sure they won’t do it again.

Caeser: I must clear my name and put the people who cheated us in their place.

Jester: It’s your wish man; if you want to get your ear bit off then go for it.

Caeser: I’ll make the people of Corydon Deus proud. One of their own whipped one of the Reditus proud champions.

Jester: Okay, but don’t say I didn’t warn you.

Caeser: Warning duly noted.

(Shady Man walks in.)

Shady Man: Are you sure you want to do this? Killer Mad Dog Felnis has never lost a match. I doubt you’re going to beat him. Regardless, this will make a good show. The boss is already flooded with bets against you. When you lose, the boss will be a very happy man.

Caeser: I’m not going to lose. You should’ve cheated us. Now you’re going to see the real Caeser in battle.

Shady Man: Good luck to you.

(The next day the fighting hall is completely packed with all types of people shouting and hollering. Caeser walks into the fighting hall in the crowd and can be heard saying things about him.)

Crowd: We have a new ear donor.

Crowd: How much money do you want to bet that the champ bites off his left ear first?

Crowd: 50 G.

(Killer Mad Dog Felnis walks into the fighting hall. The crowd starts chanting his name.)

Crowd: Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis!

The Shady Man: Ladies and Gentlemen! We have a rare rematch. In the first time of our fight club history, a fighter has willingly offered to donate his ear to the champ. So I hope you are prepared for a gruesome showdown between the champ and the Heremus Masher; one of which will be remembered as the bloodiest fight in our history.

Crowd: Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis! Killer Mad Dog Felnis!

(Caeser and Killer Mad Dog Felnis face each other in the center of the ring.)

Shady Man: Get it on!

(The battle begins.)

**KMDM Boss**

Augustus must continue to cast cure and haste if you are to survive this battle. There is an aggression meter on the left-hand side. As Caeser attacks KMDM this aggression meter will continue to rise. Once it’s fully risen, KMDM will attempt to bite off your ear. When he does this the player must repeatedly push a button while he’s trying to bite off your ear. If the player doesn’t push it fast enough then he will die. During the battle, KMDM will get frustrated.

Killer Mad Dog Felnis:  I keep hitting him but it doesn’t seem to affect him. What kind of witchcraft is this? I’m getting tired.

Caeser: Keep throwing your punches, I can take this all day.

(When the player defeats KMDM)

Shady Man: 1….2….3…..4….5….6….7….8…9….10 and the winner is Caeser!

(The crowd goes silent)

Crowd: It’s not possible. How can the champ be defeated? Booooooo!

(Caeser walks from the arena into the locker room.)

**Shady man’s Heist**

Caeser: I can’t believe I beat him. Father, did you have some hand in this?

Augustus: I couldn’t help myself.

Jester: You sneaky dogs.

Theresa: So you mean to say that if it wasn’t for your magic he would’ve got his butt kicked?

Augustus: Let’s just say that Caeser is not as good of a fighter as you thought he was.

(Shady Man walks in)

Shady Man: You upset some pretty powerful people by winning this match. My boss just lost a lot of money. He wants some compensation before we let you go to the mainland.

Augustus: That wasn’t part of the deal?

Shady Man: Well the deals have been changed.

Theresa: That’s not fair.

Caeser: Well, what do you want now?

Shady Man: You’re going to help Jester rob the second-most richest man on the Southern Continent. He’s my boss’s main competitor. His name is Alfonso. We want his most prized possession so we can keep him in his place.

Caeser: And what’s that?

Shady Man: He keeps a sealed glass case in his room which contains an authentic letter from Adm. Anthony. If you don’t know, Adm. Anthony is head over the Reditus and the most powerful man on Gaia. That letter is worth more than all the gold of Tandoor.

Augustus: How are we going to sneak into his room?

Shady Man: You’re not going to, Jester is. All of you are going to create diversions so that Jester can make his way inside. Your first obstacle is his guard standing outside which he rotates every 24 hours. The first guard, how do we say, has an inclination for the opposite sex if you know what I mean. You’ll often find him sitting in the bar on his off-duty hours ogling the whores and barmaids. Theresa, you will lure him to a room with the promise of adventures.

Augustus: Whoa! Whoa! Did you just say my wife is going to pretend to be a prostitute?

Shady Man: Don’t worry man; nothing will happen as long as you do your job.

Augustus: And my job is?

Theresa: Your job is to make sure he stays away from my booty. Understand?

Shady man: Caeser, focus, I have a man that works at the bar who will tell you which room he has booked. It will behoove you to sneak in that room and hide before the guard arrives. Once you take care of him, take the key. You will then wear his uniform and make your way to the front gate of Alfonso’s home. Augustus, you’ll approach the on-duty Guard and make a request to see Alfonso. The guard has orders to refuse all visitors. When he refuses you, you tell him that you’re Alfonso’s old buddy from his school days. If he refuses you again, you tell him that you demand to see Alfonso. Whatever you do, don’t lose the guard's attention. Caeser, you’ll just walk on by like you work there and open the door. Jester, you sneak over the wall and wait in the bushes until Caeser arrives. Once Caeser opens the door you must sneak in and steal the letter. From this point on you're pretty much on your own.

Caeser: What about me? What will I do after I open the door?

Shady Man: You begin an altercation with Augustus. You tell him to get the hell out of there and chase after him. Augustus, make sure to run away after Caeser starts threatening you. Then you’ll chase him. You have your exit.

Caeser: I don’t know about this father.

Shady Man: You want to go to the mainland or what? I know you’re Rediits and I know there’s a bounty on your head. There’s no way you’ll get to the mainland without our help. You made your decision to fight now here are the consequences.

Augustus: We’re in.

Shady Man: First meet my man at the bar Zen. Then we’ll begin.

**Heist in Zen**

Man working at bar: I’ll meet you at the Inn. Book one room and I’ll meet you there in the evening.

(Party stays at Inn. Man working at the bar comes later that evening.)

Man working at the bar: My name is Stephen. I will be working with you. I’m sure the Shady Man informed you about everything.

Theresa: Yeah, especially the part where I have to try to seduce a guard. I really like the part, yuck.

Stephen: Don’t worry everything will work according to the plan. You just have to keep your cool.

Caeser: If that filthy guard lays a single finger on Theresa I’ll cut his fingers off.

Stephen: Talking like a gangster now are we?

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

Augustus: Airloft you’ll stay at the Inn okay.

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

(The party will be split now into different individuals. During the heist the player can switch between characters at any time, but for the heist to be successful the player must complete each part of the heist according to the plan.)

(The next evening.)

Theresa (She approaches the guard.): Hello handsome, can I sit here?

Filthy Guard: Are you the finest thing I’ve ever laid eyes on? I’ve never seen you before here. What brings you here tonight?

Theresa: I’m from Albrook and my boyfriend went to Hamilton. So I was looking to have a little fun tonight. I heard Zen is the place to do it.

Filthy Guard: You sure have come to the right place darling. Why don’t we go somewhere where we can have even more fun?

Theresa: Sounds good sweetheart.

Filthy Guard: Just give me a moment.

Theresa (Quietly): Yuck...

(The Filthy Guard approaches the bar to speak to somebody at the front desk about a room. He first approaches a woman at the front desk but Stephen intervenes.)

Stephen: Nancy, I have this one. Go take a break.

Stephen: How can I help you sir?

Filthy Guard: I want your finest room. He looks at Theresa and then looks back. t.

Stephen: That’s on the second floor, room 204; it’s the furthest one on the right. You can’t miss it.

Filthy Guard: Looks like I’m getting lucky tonight.

Stephen: You sure are sir.

Filthy Guard: What was that?

Stephen: Nothing sir, have a good night.

(The player must now switch to Caeser and talk to Stephen to find out which room Filthy Guard is staying in. Then the player must quickly run to that room and find a hiding spot. If the player doesn’t find a hiding spot then the guard will see Caeser and will quickly run out of the room and raise the alarm, game over. In the room are a closet and a bed. If the player attempts to hide in the closet Caeser will say,)

Caeser: No, I can’t hide in here. What if he opens it in an attempt to put something inside?

(If the player attempts to going to the bathroom, Caeser will say,)

Caeser: I can’t hide in here. What if he decides to use the bathroom?

(The only place the player can hide is underneath the bed. Once the player is hidden the player must switch to Theresa. If the player switches anybody else other than Theresa, game over. When the player switches to Theresa, the player will see events through Theresa’s eyes. This means after the Filthy Guard books the room she will see Caeser follow and speak to Stephen.)

Theresa: Well, big boy. Are you ready to have some fun?

Filthy Guard: My dream is coming true. A beautiful woman that’s too easy. Am I dreaming right now? I better pinch myself and find out.

Theresa: You’re not dreaming. I’m definitely all over you honey.

Filthy Guard: Let’s go I can’t take any more of this.

(Filthy Guard turns around.)

Theresa: Me neither. (Quietly) Yuck.

(Theresa and the Filthy Guard go to the room that the Filthy Guard booked and they both sit on the bed. The Filthy Guard makes a move but Theresa quickly stops him.)

Theresa: Why don’t you go freshen up big boy? There’s a bathroom there.

Filthy Guard: That’s right, I got carried away there. (He goes to the bathroom.)

Theresa: (quietly) Where are you Caeser?

Caeser: Underneath the bed.

Theresa: Thank Corydon Deus. He’s in the bathroom. You have to do something now or I’m going to die if he breathes over me one more time.

Caeser: I’m going to wait for him outside the bathroom. As soon as he comes out I’ll hit him over the head and knock him out with that vase.

(The player must go and collect the vase and then wait outside the bathroom. The guard comes out naked.)

Filthy Guard: I’m ready honey. I’m ready to be a bad boy.

(The player must push a button as soon as the Filthy Guards stop talking. The player then knocks him out.)

Caeser: He’s out cold. Where’s his clothes?

(Caeser must quickly go into the bathroom and collect his clothes and the key.)

Theresa: Hurry and put that on. You have to help Jester.

(Caeser quickly puts on the Filthy Guard’s clothes. The player must then switch to Augustus.)

(Augustus walks up to the guard standing outside Alfonso’s home. Each new line of dialogue the player must choose to engage. This is not an autorun sequence.)

Augustus: Hello Sir.

Guard: Good evening Sir, how can I help you?

Augustus: I’m here to see Alfonso. He’s an old friend of mine from school. I moved to Hamilton from the mainland and I heard he was staying here in the Southern Continent. How is that old dog?

Guard: I have orders for no one to enter his home. If you write down your name in this booklet I’m sure he will be glad to get back with you.

Augustus: You’re telling me that Alfie has become so rich and stuck up I have to sign my name in the book just to meet him.

Guard: Sir, please just calm down. This is protocol for everyone.

Augustus: I demand to see Alfie now!

Guard: Sir, if you’re going to raise your voice I’m going to have to ask you to leave.

(At this moment the player should switch to Jester.)

Augustus: I’m not going anywhere.

If the player pushes the action button again,

Guard: Okay, let me go get the boss. School friend or not he’s not going to like this at all.

(Game over.)

(Once the player switches, the player will have to move to the side of Alfonso’s home and push the action button. Jester will then throw a rope with a hook on the end onto the wall and then climb over and hide in the bushes near the doorway. The player should then switch to Caeser.)

If Caeser talks to the guard,

Guard: Hey do I know you? Where’s the other guy?

Guard: Let me check with Alfonso, just wait here.

(Game over.)

(Caeser should walk directly to the door and use the key. The player must then switch to Jester.)

(Once the player has switched to Jester they should go inside the home. If they decide to go near the guard, the guard will say,)

Guard: Thief! (He quickly runs off.)

(Game over.)

(Once Jester is in the mansion the player should switch to Caeser. Caeser should then go to Augustus. Then the player should push the action button.)

Caeser: Get the hell out of here! This is the last time I’m going to tell you to never come back here again!

(Caeser pushes Augustus.)

Augustus: Don’t touch me! Prepare yourself!

(A game battle begins between Augustus and Caeser)

In this battle the player has control over Augustus and Caeser. When Augustus' health is low the player should flee with Augustus. If the player’s health with Augustus reaches zero then,

(Game over.)

(When Augustus runs away Caeser chases after him in an autorun sequence. The game will automatically switch to Jester who is inside Alfonso’s mansion.)

**Alfonso’s Mansion**

**Enemies of Alfonso’s mansion**

1. Guard Dog
2. Alfonso’s Cadet
3. Velvet Phantom
4. Alfonso’s Autonomous Guardian
5. Alfonso’s Supervisor

**Jester’s Infiltration**

Jester will have to steal everything here for his survival. Whatever med kits the party has and other items will not be enough to sustain him. With this in mind the enemies carry plenty of items for him to steal. Since Jester is fighting alone the player should have equipped him with items that will allow him to dodge as many attacks as possible.

On top of random battles there are also guards patrolling the hallways which must be avoided in order to avoid engaging in a difficult battle. The guards patrolling the hallway act as mini bosses and can be difficult to defeat. They are Alfonso’s supervisors. If you engage in battle with one you can flee. After fleeing Jester will run away and hide. Jester can also use certain objects on the map to hide. Jester’s specialty is that he can hide in a cardboard box in order to avoid being seen by a Guard.

Halfway through the map Jester is seen and is then chased by guards and is surrounded. Airloft bursts through the window to his aid and Jester is then engaged in a pincer attack.

(Mid battle dialogue)

Jester: Airloft thank god you’re here! You’ve been monitoring my presence all along haven’t you?

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

Airloft and Jester fight together from this point on. When Jester enters his cardboard box, Airloft flies away. Jester reaches Alfonso’s room but the door is locked.

Jester: Huh? It’s locked. Hmmmm…..? Let me see if I can pick it.

(Jester attempts to pick the lock.)

Jester: It just won’t budge. I’ve never seen a lot like this. Airloft can you find a way into that room and open the door from the inside?

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

Jester: Let me attach these robotic hands so you can unlock the door.

**Airloft Mini Game**

From this point on the player controls Airloft. They must find a way with Airloft into the room. The entrance to the room is from the air vents. If the player attempts to go outside with Airloft there are bars on the window which prevent the player from getting inside.

Airloft must also avoid being seen by the guards. Airloft also has a “cloak” ability which will allow him to hide. He is able to access new areas of the map that Jester was unable to get into. Airloft also has to fight battles alone.  Airloft should have enough EP points to survive granted the player stocked up on energy cells for this part of the game. If the player finds themselves running out of EP points then they will be forced to run from every battle. Once Airloft enters Alfonso’s room Airloft will go to the door and unlock it.

**Alfonso Proposition**

Jester reaches the glass case with the letter from Adm. Anthony and presses the action button.

Jester: Airloft, do you think you can cut the glass open with your plasma laser?

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

(Airloft begins cutting open the glass. Airloft finishes cutting open the glass.)

Jester: Phew. Got it. It’s finally over and we can finally get out of here.

(Alfonso into his bodyguards walks into the room)

Alfonso: (Clap.) (Clap.) Very nice. You’re the first to sneak in my home and get close to my most prized possession. With this letter all things are open to you within Reditus held territory. I show this letter and the oceans part, but I dare not take it out of its case. It’s not easy receiving another one. So I just show it at parties to amaze my guests. But I think your boss has other intentions. So do one thing, I’ll make a deal with you. This is a forgery of the same letter which I want you to take to your boss. It will do the same thing as this letter, but eventually one day a long time from now they will find this inauthenticity. Take it with you, present to him this, leave my possession and I will let you go. Deal?

Jester: Are you sure he won’t be able to tell this is a forgery?

Alfonso: I was saving it for this very day. I knew Dominico long coveted my most prized possession and I was waiting for the day when he would attempt to steal it. I took great pains to prepare this document.

Jester: How about this?

Alfonso: Yes?

Jester: I take both and leave you with nothing. You’re already rich, what more do you need?

Alfonso: Oh, that’s an interesting proposition. In that case, prepare to die.

**Alfonso Boss**

(Dialogue box at beginning of battle)

Alfonso: Since I was a child I have trained with the sword. You will not be able to survive this monster. My blade is like dancing with death.

If you have enough EP points Airloft should use his “Safety Wall” ability. Airloft also has a new ability using the hands that Jester added to him. The ability is called “Drone Chop” which is a heavy damaging physical attack. Jester also has a new ability called “Whistle.” This will draw attacks to him because of his high agility he is able to dodge many attacks. This ability is only active for three turns. Alfonso has a special ability called death blade which attacks with many thrusts. If Jester uses “Whistle” before Alfonso uses this ability, all of the stab attacks will be focused on Jester which most of them will be dodged. If the player needs healing, he can steal a limited amount of med kits from Alfonso and his guards. Whenever the guards are defeated they will be replaced after two turns. This will be a long battle.

(Alfonso Defeated)

**Jester’s Escape**

Alfonso: I’m wounded. You better escape while you can or I will have your head once my guards get here.

(Jester runs out of the room. The screen fades out and fades in with Jester on the roof of Alfonso’s mansion.)

Jester: Airloft, they’re hot on our tail. What are we going to do?

Airloft: Beep!

(Airloft moves to the edge of the building.)

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

Jester: What?

(Airloft moves down and then back up.)

Jester: You want me to jump on you and you’ll bring me down?

Airloft: Beep! Beep!

Jester: Okay, here goes nothing.

(Jester jumps up to the bottom of Airloft and floats down and then jumps into a bush. If Jester attempts to leave the mansion by the main gate the guard will see him.)

(Game over)

(The player must go to the wall and push the action button. Again Jester will throw a hook and climb over the wall. Then an autorun sequence will take him away from the premises.)

(The party meets up outside of town at a campfire.)

**Hamilton Revisited**

Stephen: I can’t believe you guys pulled this off. The security and that mansion are inscrutable. It’s sheer luck you made it out of there. I can’t wait to tell the boss. Whatever you guys want you’re getting it.

Augustus: I just want off the continent.

Jester: I just want that phat cash.

Theresa: How much is phat?

Jester: It’s an expression from the streets.

Theresa: What street is that? I used to live in a tent village. We didn’t have any streets.

Jester: You’re hurting my mind. Just forget about it.

Theresa: Forget about what?

Caeser: What he means to say is that you don’t understand so change the subject.

Theresa: Oh, why didn’t you just say that?

Jester (Slaps his head): Oh my god.

Theresa: So you worship Corydon Deus too?

Jester:……………….

Augustus: So let’s go back to Hamilton and get our reward.

Stephen: I’ll send a dove to Hamilton and let the boss know. Tomorrow you leave in the morning. I’m going to work. See you tomorrow.

(Stephen leaves the room.)

Jester: You wouldn’t believe what I found in the mansion. Jester shows two copies of Adm. Anthony’s letter. One is forged and the other one is real. We’re keeping the real one and our buddy Shady man’s getting the forged one. We can use this letter in the mainland. I can’t wait to go.

Caeser: You sure are a wiley one aren’t you?

Augustus: Are you sure you want to cross Shady Man? I don’t think his bosses are one for taking such things lightly. We might require your life as compensation for double-crossing him.

Jester: Don’t worry about Shady Man. I can deal with him, but just worry about going to the mainland now. So what are you gonna do in the mainland?

Augustus: From the mainland we must obtain a water ship so we can search the ocean floor.

Jester: He says, “We need to obtain a water ship so we can search the ocean floor,” What kind of world you come from, are you crazy? Stealing from someone’s mansion is one thing. Sneaking into South Tonsorem and hijacking a Figarian water ship that’s a whole new Kweh race. You’re crazy.

Augustus: There is a great treasure on the ocean floor which I must find.

Jester: Did you say – treasure?

Augustus: Yes, the greatest treasure in the world left over from the ancient world before its destruction.

Jester: Now we’re talking.

Augustus: So you’re in?

Jester: It sounds crazy, but yeah, I’m in. When we get to the mainland we’ll make a plan.

Caeser: It’s settled then, we’re a team.

(Augustus’ party leaves the next morning and the player travels to Hamilton. In Hamilton the player goes to the Shady man’s home and speaks to Shady Man.)

Shady man: Here are your papers. Good luck in Albrook, you’re gonna need all the luck you can get with whatever you Rediits do.

Augustus: You’ll see something very great, very soon. Let’s go guys

**Melbrook**

Augustus shows his papers to the Reditus guard standing at the front gate. They take the only ship to South Tonsorem.

Reditus Guard: This looks good, you’re in, welcome to Albrook.

## Melbrook Side Quests

**South Tonsorem**

**Party Enters City**

Augustus: We must find information about how to obtain an underwater ship. Let’s ask around and see what we can find out.

Theresa: The technology of the city is amazing. I could never imagine Reditus having such awesome stuff!

Caeser: The wonders we could achieve for our people if we had such technology.

Augustus: But one thing they’re missing……

Caeser and Teresa speaking at the same time: Corydon Deus.

Augustus: I think there should be a naval facility around here. Maybe we can start our investigation there.

Jester: If I can get my hands and some of the magnificent stuff here I could sell it for killing on the south continent.

Airloft: The probability of you getting caught is 99.9%. I detect weight sensors under most of the valuables here.

Jester: Just watch these hands. I can take one thing of the same weight and switch it out with my prized possession.

Augustus: Jester, keep your hands yourself here. We have much bigger fish to steal.

**Tonsorem Naval Facility**

Tonsorem Soldier: Our naval yard is the most secure in the world. Not even a fly could get inside without me knowing about it!

(The party moves away from the soldier and begins discussing how to get in the facility)

Caeser: Father, how do you plan on getting inside? The security in this place is crazy. See all the turrets?

Augustus: What do you say Jester? Can we get inside? We could use Adm. Anthony’s letter.

Jester: I think word might’ve gotten out that the letter was stolen. I was planning on using it just to get to the continent nowhere else. Hmmmm….the mansion was one thing, but this is another. They don’t just have turrets. I’m sure they have the latest laser detection technology that can pick up any type of movement. I think it would be easier to walk on water than get into this place.

Airloft: My sensors detect the lasers. I would be able to enter the facility and avoid the laser sensors, but I lack human appendages.

Theresa: Human what?

Airloft: Human appendages are……

Caeser: What he means to say is he doesn’t have arms and hands which may be necessary to find a way through the facility.

Augustus: Let’s ask around more, maybe we can find out more information. There must be something we can do.

**Eureka!**

Drunk Soldier: The reason we’re winning right now is our ships are submerged underwater. The Kohlingen Navy stays in port. Ha! Damn cowards! Hiccup! They’re scared like little girls. They had no way to destroy our ships. I bet you the Kohlingen Navy would give their own testicles just to touch one of our ships and see how it works. You see, (He begins speaking in a whisper) there’s a secret about our ships nobody knows. Our ships generate a hypostatic field which allows them to remain in water despite the great salt concentration in the ocean leftover from the Magicia War. All it takes is one EMP grenade to go off near one of our ships and our ship will rise like a turd in a toilet. Hiccup! Damn morons! These fools will never figure it out. Bartender around for my friends here! Hiccup! (He passes out at the table, the party steps away and begins discussing.)

Theresa: I want to try what he’s drinking. I’ve never seen a man so silly.

Augustus: Such behavior has been outlawed in camp. That is why you haven’t seen this before.

Caeser: Yes, such men that have entered this state by drinking too much kumis quickly utter blasphemies and find themselves on the stake or so they say.

Airloft: I have the ability with a slight modification to swim underwater.

Jester: Yes, then once you locate the Tonsorem Navem ship you place the EMP grenade near these unsuspecting fools. Grenade goes off, ship comes up.

Airloft: This is correct, but even after modification my swimming range is very limited. I will need to be placed off the coast above the water where their ships might possibly be located. Then I will have one minute to reach the ship. Then my battery will be exhausted and I will float back to the surface.

Caeser: We’ll need a small raft in Kohlingen.

Airloft: The sensors of the Tonsorem Navy will easily detect our raft.

Augustus: Then we need a raft and a distraction.

Jester: I know someone in Tandoor who might be able to give us a letter of recommendation so we can meet the king of Kohlingen.

Corydon Deus: You get me close to the king and I can alter his mind so he’ll create a distraction.

Augustus: Yes let me speak with the king then I’m sure I can make the distraction with the help of the Kohlingen Navy.

Jester: Then off to Tandoor we go.

**Tonsorem Npcs**

Shipyard worker: Boat travel is closed to Kohlingen. The naval blockade by Tonsorem has effectively isolated Kohlingen. The only way to reach Kohlingen is by land and its treacherous journey.

Old lady: My son is in the Navy. He’s currently off at war fighting Kohlingen. I know he’ll be okay. The Tonsorem navy is the best in the world. Our ships can submerge underneath water and are impossible to destroy.

**Tandoor**

**The Party Enters Tandoor**

Theresa: This place looks like so much fun! Augustus, can I and Caeser see the city I want to take a break.

Caeser: Just for a bit father. I know when we get to Kohlingen it’ll just be work and no play.

Augustus: Okay, but be safe.

(Everyone else leaves the party)

While walking in the marketplace Caeser sees a rose growing beside a vendor.

Caeser: Theresa, close your eyes, I have a big surprise for you. (Theresa closes her eyes)

Theresa: Surprise? I love surprises!

(Caeser picks the rose)

Caeser: Okay, open your eyes!

Theresa: Wow! It’s a Heremus Rose in pristine condition!

Caeser: All the things they take for granted here. They have the most beautiful things in plain sight and it seems like they’re not even grateful.

If Player completed Heremus Rose quest,

Theresa: It’s still not as beautiful as the rose you brought me.

(Caeser blushes)

Theresa: That rose you brought me carried with it great care and hardship.

If player didn’t complete does it Rose quest,

Theresa: Finally, a Heremus Rose. Well, at least you thought of me now. I’ll give you some points for that.

Caeser: Women, they never forget.

(They leave the market and enter a festival area that contains vendors with mini games the player can access now. The player when winning a mini game they get tokens which they can trade in for items. The mini games will be decided at the time of development.)

If the player does bad in a game and doesn’t win any tokens,

Theresa: Ahhhh! Come on! I want a nice toy I can show my family when we get back.

If the player does good,

Theresa: Wow! Dad’s gonna love this!

(The player can find Augustus and the rest of the party at the inn whenever they’re ready to carry on with the main story. The mini games the player can still access minus Theresa’s comments.)

Augustus: So where’s your contact. There’s great treasure to be gained so let’s hurry.

Jester: His name is Monseigneur Bon Gros. He’s a fat, ugly bastard. I used to steal priceless works of art for him back in the day. Word has it now that he got his grubby little hands into everything and he’s the most powerful, richest man in Tandoor. He owes me big time.  I used to take less than half the booty and gave him the greater share. We had a special agreement. His uncle was head of Urban Cohorts. I got caught. He bailed me out. No questions asked. But one day I got caught. My name was in the paper…… Everywhere. It was too hot for his uncle so he backed out and I was left there to languish in that dank prison cell until things calmed down. Eventually I got out. No hard feelings for the guy but…he owes me.

Corydon Deus: We will destroy this man. This Monseigneur Bon Gros.

**Monseigneur Bon Gros**

Jester: Hello I’m here to see Monseigneur Bon Gros.

Butler: I don’t think Monseigneur Bon Gros was expecting to see anyone here today.

Jester: Tell him his old buddy Jester’s here.

Butler: Will do.

(Screen fades out and fades in, the party is in front of Monseigneur Bon Gros door. Suddenly the door bursts open and Macy runs out but she’s dressed differently now. She’s dressed in a cropped top and black leather pants)

Macy: (In shock) Caeser and Augustus! What are you Rediits doing here? How did you get out of Heremus……Oh, I heard.

Caeser: Keep it down; no one is supposed to know we’re Rediits.

Macy: It’s pretty amazing you made it here to the mainland. What are you doing here?

Augustus: We came for a letter to the audience so we can meet the king of Kohlingen.

Macy: This scumbag doesn’t help anyone but himself. I thought I would come to Tandoor and start a new life, but it just so happens that I’m the hottest girl in this place. And this scumbag thinks he owns everything including me. I’m an assassin not some item girl. He says marry me or die. Then his guards locked the doors and brandished their weapons. I started a new life here. I wasn’t going to kill them so I agreed. Please save me. You saved me once Caeser from my revenge now save me from my hotness. Men can’t resist.

Caeser: We’ll see what we can do. First we have to meet Monseigneur Bon Gros. Where can we find you?

Macy: South of town, just ask anyone. My, my, look at you Caeser in your new clothes, you’re so handsome.  That Rediit garb didn’t suit you. You can be my hero.

Theresa: Hey you hussy, he’s mine.

Macy: (Makes cat hissing noise) Just chill, I’m just trying to have a little fun. Ta, ta!

(Caeser’s mouth is gaping)

Theresa: Hey! Eyes over here mister!

(Caeser blushes)

Caeser: Cough! Cough! Crazy Reditus girl.

(The butler comes out Monseigneur Bon Gros’ office.)

Butler: You may enter.

Monseigneur Bon Gros: Ahhhh Jester, it’s been a long time. I wondered what happened to you. I hope there’s no hard feelings. You understand my hands were tied. We did our best to get you out. You understand don’t you? If we weren’t there you would have been executed. So in a way we saved your life.

Jester: It's part of the hazards of the job. I knew what I was getting into before we started.  I wouldn’t have started if you hadn't been there to back me up.

Monseigneur Bon Gros: That's good chap, nice to hear. Would you like a drink? How about your friends? Scotch, Whisky, a Tandoorian Malt? Have a drink, take a load off. I have some time. What brings you this way? I’m done with thieving by the way. I make much more money with legal thievery. I own everything here now. I live like a king. The mayor answers my every beck and call. The Urban Cohorts are my little play toys. And I’ll soon marry that beautiful specimen of the female species you just saw.

Jester: We want an audience with the king of Kohlingen. You owe me. If it wasn’t for my hard work in thievery you wouldn’t be where you are. Just do this one thing for me I’ll never bother you ever again for something. Please give a letter of introduction.

Monseigneur Bon Gros: You have to understand Jester. I’m in a high position now and I can’t be associated with riff raff like you. Anyways the king of Kohlingen will soon become a puppet of Tonsorem. The Tonsorem naval blockade has bled them dry. What reason could you have meeting some pauper king?

Jester: We have a plan to steal a Tonsorem Naval Skimmer.

Monseigneur Bon Gros: How ambitious you’ve become!? Why would you need a ship like this? You want to sail the world? Why don’t you steal yourself a life and get out of here with this nonsense?

Augustus (He pulls out and shows the letter from Adm. Anthony): Will you give us a letter of recommendation on the basis of this? We have the backing of Adm. Anthony. Do you want to go against him?

Monseigneur Bon Gros: Oh, so you’re the fools who stole that letter? It has been made known that a group of ruffians are traveling around with a stolen letter from Adm. Anthony. Jester you’ve completely outdone yourself! I’m so proud of you! But I’ll be taking this letter as payment **for** not turning you into the authorities. The Reditus would love to get their hands on you.

(Monseigneur Bon Gros rings a bell and guards come in to take them out)

Corydon Deus: You will pay for this fool!

(Monseigneur Bon Gros begins holding his head and screaming while blood comes from his nostrils. Some of the guards quickly attend Monseigneur Bon Gros while the other guards quickly escort Augustus and party from his room to the courtyard near the entrance gate)

Jester: What the fuck was that?

Caeser: Father snap out of it!

Theresa: That was so freaky.

Caeser: Father!

Augustus: What? What happened?

Airloft: It seems the Magicia power inside of you completely took over your vital signs and neural networks. Your readings were completely altered from normal.

Caeser: What he’s trying to say is you were possessed.

Augustus: Yes, I wasn't feeling myself. I’ve been out of tune lately.

Caeser: Well I hate to say it but I think Macy is our only way.

Theresa: You keep your eyes off that Reditus bimbo. She’ll tempt you away from the way of Corydon Deus.

Jester: Oh yeah, I love a good cat fight. Reditus hussy versus Rediit saint. I say we throw these two in a mud pit and let'em duke it out for some first class entertainment.

Caeser: Mud pit? What would be the purpose of that?

Jester: You have much to learn senpai regarding the ways of the Reditus.

Augustus: I will destroy the Reditus.

Jester: Alrighty, as long as I get my treasure, destroy whoever you want.

**Macy**

(The player enters Macy’s home)

Caeser: Monseigneur Bon Gros is a dirty rotten thief.

Jester: He follows the code of thieves. He is a man after my own heart. He stole one of the most valuable possessions without having to lift a finger. We just brought him that letter, and said “Here, take it.”

Macy: So I take it you need my help now. I’m getting married tomorrow so better be fast. What’s the plan?

Augustus: We pin him as the kingpin responsible for the theft of Alfonso’s letter.

Macy: I’ll go to him tonight when he’s drunk then I’ll ask him to see the letter. Then after he shows me I’ll slip something into his drink so he passes out. Then I’ll take the letter and put it in his wedding tux.

Caeser: Then we notify the authorities that he has the stolen letter. Right?

Jester: But he owns the Urban Cohorts.

Macy: Not all the Urban Cohorts. Some resent his complete control. Jester, go to the Urban Cohorts station tonight and speak to a Capt. Rodriguez. Tell him you know about the missing letter and that he will be able to find it on the tux of Monseigneur Bon Gros during the wedding. Then when everyone sees this scumbag getting busted he will be completely ruined and I’ll be free.

(The camera fades in and fades out indicating passage of day)

Caeser: Will Capt. Rodriguez be there?

Jester: He’ll be there for sure. He’s looking for a reason to bust Monseigneur Bon Gros. Stealing from Alfonso is the sure ticket way.

Augustus: Did you see the letter?

Macy: No boys can resist the junk in my trunk. He was gloating, “See I’m the richest man in the world now. Even I have a coveted letter from Adm. Anthony.” When he was asleep I read that letter. It’s amazing that the words of a man can be so valued. He must be a truly great man. I wonder if he could resist the junk in my trunk.

Theresa: Close your mouth right now.

Caeser: I’m sorry I was yawning.

Augustus: What about the letter of introduction?

Jester: I thought about that. I asked the captain if he could pull some strings and write the letter. He said he’d be happy if what we say is true.

**Macy’s Marriage**

(Macy’s standing in front of a mirror)

Macy: So why do you want to go to Kohlingen?

Augustus: There’s a great treasure waiting at the bottom of the ocean. The key to getting there waits for us in Kohlingen.

Macy: Treasure? What are you gonna do with this treasure?

Augustus: I’ll bend the world to my will. My people will rule the world like they did before the Magicia war.

Macy: I love a man with ambition. If what you say comes true I’ll be there with you. Take me as your Queen.

Corydon Deus: As Queen, a woman as beautiful as you can have anything your heart desires. You will be there during my rule.

Macy: I go to the Heremus to kill Rediits and now I find myself being one’s Queen. How ironic? Let’s get this show on the road. I got a fat smelly bastard to throw in prison.

(The camera fades out and in. The entire party is seated among the other guests in the marriage. A large crowd is there. Monseigneur Bon Gros is waiting at the altar. Several of his goons are littered on the interior perimeter of the church. The priest is a robot. Electronic billboards mounted on the walls of the church flash, “Macy marries Monseigneur Bon Gros Today!” Macy walks to the altar in a fluorescent glowing wedding dress. Macy reaches the altar. The robot begins speaking.

Robotic Priest: Monseigneur Bon Gros, do you plan to use this woman to her utmost capacity in propagating Reditus dominion upon Gaia? As you know her children will be used to extract minerals of infinite worth from Gaia. It is these minerals that will bring eternal prosperity to the king Eduardus and his right-hand man Adm. Anthony of the Reditus? Do you submit?

Monseigneur Bon Gros: I do submit to the power of the Reditus and will use my marriage to propagate their influence upon Gaia.

Robotic priests: Does anyone present among us today object to the union of Macy Granwall to Monseigneur Bon Gros.

(There is a moment of silence. The robotic priest waits a moment and is about to continue when Jester and Lieut. Rodriguez burst into the church with several Urban Cohorts following behind.)

Lieut. Rodriguez: Stop this wedding! Monseigneur Bon Gros you’re under arrest for the theft of Adm. Anthony’s letter to Alfonso. We know that the words of Adm. Anthony are the most valuable possession in this world and you among all people are the most covetous dog.

(Lieut. Rodriguez begins to search Monseigneur Bon Gros’ overcoat. He pulls out of his pocket the letter.)

Lieut. Rodriguez: Here’s the proof you filthy dog.

(Monseigneur Bon Gros begins laughing uncontrollably.)

Monseigneur Bon Gros: You think I wasn’t aware of this wench’s plan. I was simply pretending to be asleep as I watched her place this letter in my pocket. Do you seriously think you can come to my wedding and arrest me? I was using this opportunity to find traitors who scurry like mice eating my table scraps while trying to bite my hand. Half the Urban Cohorts that came with Lieut. Rodriguez turned on him and unsheathed their swords and plasma rifles. Jester, I know you and your filthy Felnis friends are behind this. Prepare to die.

Macy runs to Augustus and party and quickly spins changing her outfit to her assassin garb.

Macy: I can’t believe I let you put your fatty grubby hands on my beautiful body. I was trying to reform myself from my assassin ways, but you brought out the killer in me. People like you deserve to die.

(Monseigneur Bon Gros and his goons rush the party. A battle breaks out in the church hall.)

At beginning of battle,

Monseigneur Bon Gros: You would’ve made a wonderful wife swindling by my side. We could have robbed royalty with your good looks.

(After the player wins battle Augustus kicks Monseigneur Bon Gros through the stained glass window behind the altar. A shard cuts his belly open and his innards come out.)

Monseigneur Bon Gros: Please don’t kill me, I'll give you whatever you want.

Corydon Deus: Your flesh will be fuel for my flames. They shall feast on your innards and the sweet scent of their aroma will make an offering to Corydon Deus! Ignis!

Macy: Magic is very alive indeed.

Theresa: I can’t watch it’s so gruesome.

Caeser: Father……

(Monseigneur Bon Gros bursts into flames. Jester picks up the letter and gives it to Lieut. Rodriguez who has been wounded. Several wounded and dead Urban Cohorts litter the ground)

Lieut. Rodriguez: I thank you very much Jester for your actions here today. You have rid the city of this vile evil whose yeast has permeated every facet of society spreading its corruption everywhere. You and your friends shall receive the letter of recommendation which was promised, but it will be a hard journey to Kohlingen. Normally people travel by water from South Tonsorem, but that way is closed because of the war. You will have to travel through the mountains which are quite dangerous because of a strange strain of mutant plants which have been devouring people recently. Good luck.

Jester: You hear that, I’m no longer a thief; I’m the hero of Tandoor.

**NPCs of Tandoor**

Lieut. Rodriguez (before battle): I stand for justice here. If you have any complaints please present them before me and they will be dealt with accordingly.

Lieut. Rodriguez (after battle): A man among you cast magic. Is it possible?

**Mountain Pass to Kohlingen**

(At the base of the mountain beside the path leading up to the summit is a dilapidated factory. A sign can be read which says, “Dangerous Leakage; Stay Away.” As the players walk away one of the barrels leaks onto a plant and it begins to mutate.)

Theresa: It seems as if the Reditus’ love for precious minerals is destroying Gaia. So much filth seems to be coming from that abandoned factory.

Caeser: They have so much, but at the same time so much want. It’s such a strange dichotomy.

Augustus: Now you see why Corydon Deus purified the world years ago.

Jester: Purified, you mean destroyed.

Macy: Yeah, my parents died in the great shaking. So they needed to be purified?

Caeser: Yeah father I don’t think all Reditus are bad; some are good. Lieut. Rodriguez wanted justice and purity.

Corydon Deus: There is no one pure, only those who Corydon Deus makes pure.

(Macy is about to say something but Caeser shakes his head insinuating that she should just leave the topic.)

Macy: If I follow you what will your god give me?

Augustus: Magic like I have; a power beyond belief. He’ll give you the ability to set the world on fire and destroy your enemies with a snap of your fingers. You’ll be the ultimate assassin.

Macy: Hmmmm…..I’d like that, maybe my parent’s deaths weren’t in vain.

**Man Eating Plant**

(The party reaches the top of the summit. The party hears a consistent rustling in the vegetation.)

Airloft: I sense a vegetative matter that is moving at an accelerated rate. Its patterns are similar to that of a wild beast. I suggest we get ready for combat.

Jester: I think this is what Lieut. Rodriguez was speaking about. I don’t want to die and become plant food. Where’s a Weed Wacker when you need one.

Caeser: (Caeser pulls out his blade) Say hello to your Weed Wacker.

(Man eating plant is defeated.)

Augustus: What corruption? To think nature could be turned against humans. Such is the carelessness of the Reditus. Let this be a lesson to all of you not to trust in minerals and science. Doing such a thing is like laying down in a bed of roses. Though it may seem good, the thorns pierce your flesh.

Caeser: I think such progress is good, but progress unchecked can have disastrous consequences. Maybe we can teach Reditus how to balance the two.

Theresa: I agree, just imagine how our camp could develop with all this technology.

Corydon Deus: You still have much to learn. I will teach you more in the coming days.

**Kohlingen**

**Meeting The King**

(When the party arrives in Kohlingen, the front gate is closed and a guard calls out to them.)

Guard: Are you Reditus? If so, tell our brothers to quit fighting us! Go back from where you came with this message.

Jester: We come from Tandoor! We have a letter of introduction to the king from Capt. Rodriguez. We wish to see the king.

Guard: Oh is it now? One moment.

(Some time passes. Eventually the guard comes back.)

Guard: Let me see that letter.

(The guard throws down a bucket for the party to place the letter into. Once the letter is placed he pulls up the bucket. After some time passes the guard comes back.)

Guard: All right, come in, but no funny business you hear.

(The gate opens and the party walks into Kohlingen. The captain of the guard meets them.)

Capt. Guard: Amazing you guys made it here. We don’t have many visitors or merchants come this way due to the conditions in the mountains and the naval blockade.

Caeser: I discovered a talent for weed whacking in those mountains. What strange things are happening?

Capt. Guard: Yes, the soothsayers say it’s an ill omen when nature turns against man. It’s as if Gaia is trying to spit out men from its habitation like the body fights an illness. I wonder if the world’s going to end.

Augustus: This could be the case.

Capt. Guard: Then forget science, may the gods help us all.

Corydon Deus: The worms will help you when you’re 6 feet under.

Capt. Guard: What?

Augustus: I mean may the worms fertilize the soil for a bountiful harvest so that the crops roots reach deep into the ground.

Caeser: (He whispers to his father.) Control your mouth father.

Augustus: Yeah I don’t know what comes over me sometimes.

(The party enters the throne room.)

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Please state your business. I’m in the middle of a war and I have more pressing matters to attend to. This better be good.

Jester: We have come with a proposition my Lord. I believe it’s a proposition that you will find much to your interest. Our work requires a Tonsorem Navem Ship. We wish to capture one and for you to create a diversion for us to do so. In exchange for you helping us, we will let you reverse engineer the ship to use against the Tonsorem Navy. Then we’ll be on our way.

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Last I checked all Tonsorem Navem Ships mostly operate underwater. Unless you plan on transforming into a fish and swimming up its ass; I think it's fanciful thinking.

Caeser: My Lord, a drunken Tonsorem engineer revealed to us the secret of making them surface.

King Ashe of Kohlingen: And what is that secret?

Augustus: If we tell you, how do we know you will not throw us like trash and not reward us?

King Ashe of Kohlingen: I could just throw you in prison until you break and tell.

Augustus: But do you have the luxury of waiting for that to happen?

King Ashe of Kohlingen: No, no unfortunately I do not, but you are asking me to sacrifice some of my Navy to help someone I just met. How do I know I can trust you? I’ll require from you a deposit to ensure your return. One of you must stay behind. Who shall stay is for you to decide. Upon your successful return I will return your human cargo. If you die in your attempt, they will remain in my service until the war is over, and be treated fairly. Do you agree to my terms?

If yes,

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Excellent! Now choose who must stay behind. (The player can choose any character except Airloft.)

If no,

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Feel free to wait in the city until you change your mind.

(Once the player has agreed)

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Tomorrow early dawn we will begin our attack. I will provide a fast skimmer with which you can break away from the main group and speedily do what you must. In the meantime, explore the city and replenish your supplies.

Jester: Thank you my Lord. You will recognize this as the turning point of the war against Tonsorem.

King Ashe of Kohlingen: Things are desperate indeed when I have no choice but to put such faith in strangers.

Caeser: Your faith will not be misplaced.

**Kohlingen Npcs**

Merchant: Before the war business was booming, but now I hardly get any business. The prices for everything keep going up. Maybe I should start working on a farm as a laborer.

Guard: It’s just a matter of time for Tonsorem troops to make landfall and place Kohlingen under siege. They’re just biding their time until we’re weak enough.

Prostitute: Business is good now. The soldiers are so depressed so they seek my services constantly.

Child: I’m so hungry I could eat this cat. It’s been weeks since I had meat. (Cat is hanging from a tree branch.)

Angry Elderly Housewife: I catch you one more time by the brothels you might wake up emasculated!

Old Scolded Man: It was only one time and now I have to pay for it the rest of my life. Sometimes in the middle of the night I wake up in a cold sweat and check my testicles. I keep a lock on the knife drawer.

**Side Quest Girl by the well Cont’d**

If the player chose to lie to the girl sitting by the well you find her working as a prostitute near the city’s gate in Kohlingen.

Sapphira: Do you remember me? You lied to me and I left our camp to find out the truth. These people took advantage of me and I became a prostitute.

Augustus: Why do you degrade yourself so girl?

Sapphira: What choice do I have? With no money and no means of survival I chose the only thing that could put food on my table. Plus, once they found out that I was from the Heremus it increased my exotic allure. I’m able to charge double that of other girls. Would you like to be my client as well?

If the player says yes,

Augustus: Yes, I would like to be your client.

Ceaser: Father! Are you crazy? What about mother?

Sapphira: Again you disappoint me Augustus, farewell.

If the player says no,

Augustus: No, I would much rather bring you back to camp and show you the great things Corydon Deus is going to do through me with the magic that now lives inside of me.

Augustus holds a fireball in his hand.

Sapphira: I’m impressed Augustus. I will return back to the camp. Here take this as a reward. Player receives an accessory.

**Attack on The Tonsorem Navy**

(King Ashe of Kohlingen addresses his troops from his ship into a microphone as they are gathered in front of him. The boat itself has a futuristic design. The ship has many turrets located on the surface and its deck is closed from the air. It looks almost like a giant, metallic, floating fortress with many curved surfaces.)

King Ashe of Kohlingen: As you know we suffered humiliating defeat after defeat. The enemy has advanced technology which they have unjustly brought to bear upon our nation. They’ve turned a quarrel about territorial waters as a means to justify a war against us. We’ve tried many times to negotiate a peace with our Reditus brothers but they simply close their greedy ears to our pleas. So this is the day we no longer go on the defense. We found a weakness in their Navem ship design. Today we will exploit that weakness in an attempt to use Tonsorem against itself.

(The Kohlingen Navy leaves port and begins launching depth charges into the water. The Tonsorem Navy responds by shooting fast projectiles from the bottom of the sea which tear through the Kohlingen Navy. One projectile rips through the hull of the Kohlingen Navy destroyer and it begins to sink. The ship's desperate sailors open hatches on the surface of the ship and begin pouring out. They jump to the depths below. Lifeboats are ejected from hatches in the lower side of the ship and they cling to those as well.

Amidst the destruction Augustus and party bob and weave through the hulking masses avoiding both projectiles and ships alike as the chaos ensues around them. Caeser ducks as a projectile jumps from the water just beside the ship. Theresa grabs on tight to Caeser.)

Theresa: Airloft! How much longer!

Airloft: In approximately 1000 m I will be inserted into the water and begin my descent. The ship must move in a zigzag pattern near my location to continue to avoid enemy fire.

Augustus: 800 m and closing!

Jester: I’m not quite sure if any treasure is worth this! What I wouldn’t give to just steal some purses.

Macy: Don’t be discouraged, Jester! I’m sure whatever is waiting for you there in the bottom of the ocean means you’ll never have to steal again!

Jester: If I survive to never steal again!

(A projectile grazes the side of the skimmer causing substantial damage to the hull.)

Caeser: We’re going to sink! We’re going to sink!

Theresa: I don’t want to die here without having kids.

Caeser: Kids?

Augustus: Do not fret. Corydon Deus is with us! Ignis Amnis!

(A jet of fire spews from Augustus’ hand causing the hull to meld shut which temporarily causes the leaking to stop.)

Captain: We’re not sinking! We’re not sinking!

Caeser: We’re not going to sink; we’re not going to sink! My father did it again.

Augustus: Do not give me the credit it was the power of Corydon Deus inside of me.

Theresa: If it’s a girl. I’ll name her Suzy; if it’s a boy, Jerome.

Macy: I don’t think I want kids.

Jester: Is this the time to discuss matters of the womb. We’re so close to death and you crazy women wish to discuss life.

Airloft: We have reached the destination. My sensors detect a large grouping of Tonsorem Navem Ships below us.

Augustus: Activate swim mode.

(Augustus throws Airloft off the ship as they continue to move in a zigzag pattern above. Fast moving projectiles skim past airloft as he reaches the fleet. A compartment opens and Airloft drops an EMG grenade. The grenade goes off causing the hypostatic fields surrounding the ships to be disrupted. Two begin rising to the surface. Once the Navem Ships rise to the surface the captain makes a sudden decision.)

Captain: We’re going to take both.

(Airloft bursts from the depths of the ocean onto the deck of the skimmer.)

Airloft: We have approximately 20 minutes before their hypostatic fields regenerate and they’re able to re-submerge.

Capt.: We’ll split up into two groups. Augustus, your group will take one ship and my men and I will go after the other. Helmsman, make a course for the closest ship.

(The skimmer reaches the deck of the Tonsorem Navem Ship. The party jumps onto the deck and is followed by the captain and one of his crew. The surface hatch is closed.

Capt.: I figured this would be a problem. Let’s open her up.

(The sailor pulls out a laser drill which begins to melt the surface hatch around its opening. The top hatch falls in after they’re done melting.)

Capt.: Good luck mates! See you back at the Castle hopefully safe and sound.

(The party rushes onto the ship. The party will have to fight a series of battles as they make their way deeper into the ship. The captain has left the laser drill. The party is forced to melt the door leading into the captain’s helm.)

Tonsorem Captain: You think you can have this bloody ship!? I’ll fight to the death before I let you take my darling.

(A boss battle ensues. The captain is flanked by two other crewmen who also engage in the battle. The captain is an accomplished swordsman. His crewmen carry small pistols.)

The player defeats the captain,

Capt.: You thought you could have my ship huh? Ugh….. Self-destruct activate! (He dies.)

Computer system: Self-destruct activated.

Augustus: Airloft! Can you do something about this?

Airloft: I will attempt to hack the system and deactivate the self-destruct sequence.

(The player will now engage in a mini game. This minigame will be a 2D side scrolling shooter. The player will have three attempts to shoot their way to the end and destroy a 3d ball which represents the computer.)

After hacking,

Computer: Self-destruct sequence deactivated; resuming normal operations.

Airloft: You owe me what humans refer to as a party. I just made what humans refer to as a joke. Ha!……… Ha!

Jester: Oh robot humor. Never was a fan of robot humor.

Augustus: Airloft you did it! You can have whatever you want just name it.

Airloft: I will continue to follow directives one and two. My parameters allow me to do nothing more.

Caeser: Well before the enemy finds that we’ve taken their ship we have to do something fast. We’re not out of this deep water yet let’s go!

Airloft: While you humans were speaking in elation I’ve already been overriding autopilot and engaging the ship in the manual pilot mode. We’re almost halfway to the port. The Kohlingen Navy has taken large casualties. I also detected another Tonsorem Navem Ship traveling by us. They will arrive in port shortly after we do. The mission has been a success.

(A voice begins hailing their ship.)

Port Authority: Welcome to Kohlingen . We are opening the port gates for your entry. Standby for docking.

(The camera fades out and fades in. The king is meeting the party in his throne room.)

King Ashe of Kohlingen: My Navy was badly damaged, but it was worth the cost. Instead of one Tonsorem Navem Ship we have received two. My engineers have already reverse engineered the technology that allows them to operate their ships underwater. We will begin construction immediately all thanks to you. The one you captured is yours and the other one is ours for further study. I’m releasing your human cargo from my service. I had my engineers modify your ship so it’ll run quieter so you may exit our port without being detected by the Tonsorem Navy. You are free to leave.

Jester: Thank you my Lord.

(The party cannot travel

**Ocean Floor And New Places**

The party now has access to many places in the world which they can visit minus the land the Castle of Tonsorem and Ehsran.

**Neo V Revisited (Optional)**

Caeser: I told you I’d come back for you.

Neo V: PO!

 Caeser: It seems that you have a large family. Are you sure you want to come with us?

Neo V: PO!..........PO!

(Neo V begins speaking with his family, moving between the other three small Felnis who are his children. Neo V returns to Caeser indicating he’s ready to go.)

Caeser: You ready to go?

Neo V: PO!

**The Island of Magus And Npcs (Optional)**

Child Magician: You want to see a trick?

If yes,

Young Child: Here, give me one gold coin. I’m sending your gold coin to a different dimension. Abracadabra abracadabra! Your coin is gone. The kid runs off.

Caeser: Hey come back here you little thief!

Theresa: Let’em go. Kids can be so naughty sometimes.

Caeser: Not my kids. I’ll put the foot down if you know what I mean.

Theresa: Wow, a strict daddy like your father.

Augustus: I wasn’t that strict. I made sure to instill in him the mandates of Corydon Deus. That is why he is so well behaved.

Wandering Tourist: I love exploring this place, they have some wannabe magicians.

Wandering Tourist: One kid just ran off with my gold coin, but he was so cute and adorable. I just let him go.

Magus Citizen: Magic might be dead but here at the island of Magus we try to keep that spirit alive.

Corydon Deus: Can someone remind me why I didn't completely destroy these people?

Magus Historian: Here at the village of Magus a great betrayal of Fabricius took place. Many lost their lives as Corydon Deus absorbed their Magicia.

(The player walks into a large hall.)

Usher: Would you like to see the magic show? 10GP?

If yes,

Usher: Come on, the show is about to begin.

If no,

Usher: Come back soon. You’re seriously missing the greatest magic show in the world!

When Yes,

(The player walks into a large, dark, hall with many people sitting in the crowd. Suddenly a spotlight appears and a magic show begins.)

Gustav the Magician: For my first trick I will attempt to saw my assistant in half and then reattach her body together again.

(His assistant Marla appears on the stage and begins to wave at the crowd. Marla lays into the box. Gustave the Magician begins to spin around the box to show the audience there’s nothing behind it. He then picks up a saw and waves it around. He then begins to saw her body through a groove in the box. She begins to scream and shout. The children in the crowd begin to cry. Fake blood pours out of the box. One person faints, several get up and leave, some remain fixated to the spectacle before them. Once finished the magician opens the box and shows the crowd her fake innards. Again he joins the box and places a black cloth over it.

Gustav the Magician: As you can see I’ve split my dear Marla into two pieces.

(Gustav the magician looks confused for a moment forgetting what he’s supposed to do.)

Marla: Put me back together.

Gustav the Magician: Ahh yes. Now with the power of magic I will join her together again.

(Gustav the Magician places a black cloth over the box.)

Gustav the Magician: May the true God grant you wisdom.  May the true God grant you power. AbracadabraDE! AbracadabraDO! May Marla’s body be one.

(He quickly pulls the block cloth from the box and opens the box to show Marla’s joined body.)

After the show,

Gustav the Magician: Thanks for coming. It’s always wonderful to see outsiders come to our wonderful island of magic. (He whispers to Augustus)  It wasn’t always this way.  My father could cast real magic. How wonderful those days must’ve been. Isn’t that right Corydon Deus?

(Before Augustus can respond another person pushes him so they can meet Gustav the Magician.)

If the player attempts to talk to Gustav the Magician again,

Fan: Hey, you already had your turn! Get back in line and wait like everyone else.

Corydon Deus: It is true the people on this island could cast real magic before the War of Magicia. The humans on this island were close to the gate to the Fabricius world. Fabricius came to this island and saw that the daughters of Magus were beautiful and they took any of them they wanted as a wife. The true God saw this and was displeased at the pride of their descendants because they inherited such great magical powers. So he closed the gates between the world of Fabricius and the world of men. Over time the magical powers of their descendents became weaker as their bloodline was diluted with human blood. Until one day a genetic anomaly, a magical mutation so to speak, one of their descendents was born with great magical power and I used her abilities to reopen the gate for the Fabricius world. She still lives today; I can feel her presence.

Vendor: The gate to the Fabricius world was once located to the south connected by an inlet to the Southern Continent. During the War of Magicia, the gate and the surrounding land floated high in the sky. It must’ve been a beautiful sight. My grandfather always spoke about it to me with such awe.

Stewart: When the great floating continent fell from the sky one can but wonder where its gate landed deep within the ocean.

**Pirates Cove**

(When the party first submerges)

Jester: I know someone who might know the possible location of the Fabricius gate. He’s a pirate known by the name of Mr. Blunderbuss. He knows the seas like the back of his hand.

Jester: (The city of Pirates is located on the coast of a lagoon which can be accessed by using the Navem ship and submerging through a hole in the reef.)

When the party enters the city,

Jester: My home away from home. Welcome to the city of Pirates. Good ole Blunderbuss should be around here. He’s the king of Pirates. Let’s speak to him. He might also have some work for us.

Augustus: I’m no thief.

Jester: What is that parked on the beach?

Caeser: He does have a point.

Theresa: We’re bona fide thieves now.

Macy: My designer clothes aren’t going to buy themselves. That beach looks like a nice place to wear my bikini I just bought.

Theresa: What’s a bikini? Is it like a fancy robe; they only let us wear robes in camp.

Macy: Caeser I’m going to borrow your wife for a bit. We’ll be on the beach in our bikinis come and meet us when you’re done with Mr. Blunderbuss.

(The party meets Macy and Theresa before meeting Mr. Blunderbuss.

Caeser: That’s a bikini? Put your clothes on. You’re almost naked.

Augustus: Such clothes or not in accordance with Corydon Deus.

Theresa: Macy says you Rediits need to chill out and enjoy life a little bit.

Macy: Anyways, she’s got a hot bod. She needs to show it off.

Caeser: That hot bod is mine and no one else can look at it.

Macy: Are you jealous?

Theresa: Okay. Okay. I’ll put on my clothes.

Macy: I know you like what you see.

(Caeser blushes. The camera fades out and in and the player has control again)

If the party attempts to meet him in the tavern before getting Theresa and Macy,

Jester: Hey, didn't we forget Theresa and Macy?)

(The party finds Mr. Blunderbuss in a tavern. A man is tied by his hands and feet spread out on a spinning wheel. As the man is spun around Mr. Blunderbuss throws a knife trying to hit where there is no flesh.)

Mr. Blunderbuss: Where’s my share of the loot? Nobody steals around here without giving me my share. Were you hiding the Blunderbuss tax?

Spinning Man: I swear to Gaia I gave you everything.

(Mr. Blunderbuss throws a knife which lands right between the man’s crotch.)

Mr. Blunderbuss: Next one might hit their mark. I almost got it.

Spinning Man: Ok, ok, it’s buried in Coveman Reef.

Mr. Blunderbuss: That’s guarded by Locknessie. She’s an abominable beast with an insatiable appetite for thieves and non-thieves alike. How did you get in there?

Spinning Man: I told me crewmate that if they come and help me bury me treasure. I give them a share. So when we reached Lochnessy I kicked me crewmate into the water and while Lochnessie was a feeding on’em I snuck in. Once I buried me treasure, Lochnessie was asleep; her appetite satiated and all I snuck right back out.

Mr. Blunderbuss: If ye lie to me I’ll have ye wang dangling on me string of wangs. Now I need one of these scalawags to do my dirty work. Who’s going to git what belongs to me?

(All his crew mates run out but Jester and the party walk in.)

Jester: I’m happy to see you, you quick witted pirate. I’m in need of some help.

Mr. Blunderbuss: I ain’t a pirate. You know I hate that word. You see a black patch on my eye or some parakeet on my shoulder. You smell rum on my breath; I hate rum. You scallywag. Call me a thief or I’ll remind you of this.

Jester: Whoa, whoa, only grabbing your tail Blunderbuss

Mr. Blunderbuss: What can I help you with?

Jester: Might you know where the fallen gate of the Fabricius is?

Mr. Blunderbuss: I have an inkling mate. A thief’s hunch where the gate might be, but first you have to help me. You came just in the nick of time. I’ll give you half of my share of what belongs to me once you find it and I’ll send you in the right direction of where I think the Fabricius gate might be.

Jester: What work must I do?

Mr. Blunderbuss: You must go to a reef you can only access by cave to the east. What belongs to me is buried loot located on the map I’m giving you.

Jester: Is there anything else we should know?

Mr. Blunderbuss: Nope, now begon with ya I’m antsy for me loot.

(As the party is walking out)

Augustus: You trust this guy?

Jester: Yes, he always pays up for the work we do, but what he doesn’t tell us that I don’t trust.

**Cave to Coveman Reef and Coveman Reef**

(The cave to Coveman Reef is almost like a cavern with the ocean parted by a path that leads the way through a mountain. Torches light the way. Many ocean faring monsters inhabit the cavern which the party must fight. When the party exits the cave many palm trees and bushes grow amidst small tufts of grass in between sand. The player has access to a map which leads them to the location of the treasure.)

The party reaches the treasure,

Theresa: That was easy enough. Why didn’t he send some of his latchkeys to come and dig this up?

Caeser: That’s a good question.

(A large object appears within the water near the treasure location.)

Airloft: I sense a large organic object within our location.

Theresa: A what?

(Suddenly a large beast arises from the shallow water. It is a massive hulking beast with two heads and large fins like a Leviathan. Its heads look like those of a Dragon.)

Theresa: A monster!

Airloft: Yes, what humanoids call monsters.

Augustus: Looks like we’re gonna have some fish fry.

Jester: That’s enough fish to feed us for a month, let's kill it.

(Battle begins)

After Battle,

(It’s night now and the party is around a big bonfire. There’s a large slab of meat rotating on a rotisserie.)

Caeser: Nothing like an open flame and massive Leviathan meat to go.

Theresa: This could feed our entire camp for two months.

Macy: I don’t like fish. I'll pass. Actually I’m vegetarian.

Jester: A vegan assassin. So let me get this straight, you can kill people, but you can’t kill animals and eat them.

Macy: Animals are good. People are bad. That animal never stole from anybody; it’s just trying to survive.

Jester: Hey, I also steal to survive. It’s a dog eat dog world out there. I only steal from people who deserve to be stolen from anyways. It’s a survival of the fittest baby and I’m not going to be on the bottom of the food chain.

Macy: We are the same kind of animals, you and I Augustus. We only kill those who are corrupt. We fight for justice. You on the other hand Jester only steals for you.

Augustus: There’s a sense of purity when one kills those who are unjust is it not Macy?

Macy: It’s like one is taking part in the rebirth of Gaia. I’m her midwife and she holds my hand and screams as she morphs into another being.

Augustus: There is purity in her screams; of her rebirth.

Jester: You two are on another level of psycho you know that? I’m full; going to bed.

**The City of Pirates Post Coveman Quest**

(The party drops the chest in front of Mr. Blunderbuss.)

Mr. Blunderbuss: Here’s your share. Now regarding the Fabricius gate, I’m not quite sure what you intend to do by finding this place since the gate can only be opened by magic. But that’s yer business. Before I became a thief I was the captain of a Tonsorem Navem Ship. We had a dysfunction in our hypostatic field which caused us to sink uncontrollably in the depths of the ocean. All sensors indicated that we should have been hitting the bottom of the ocean, but we kept going.  The floating continent had created a massive crater within the ocean. When we finally gained control of our ship we had reached the gate.  I’ll mark on your map where to go. It was nice doing business with you.

**Gate of the Fabricius World**

(The gate of the Fabricius world is located through a series of underwater tunnels in the middle of the crater. Once they reach the end of the tunnels they are able to surface and walk in a cave. Once they reach the gate they are attacked by a giant octopus which surfaces from a water-filled crevice located nearby.)

When the party reaches the gate,

Augustus: Finally, our people’s redemption is within reach.

Corydon Deus: We’re almost there. I can feel immense power surging through that gate. The time for my resurrection draws near.

Jester: I will be the richest man in the world.

Caeser: I hope it was worth it, father coming all this way and going through so much.

Theresa: I can’t wait to get back home and start ourfamily.

Macy: Infinite power. I’ll be the ultimate assassin.

When the octopus attacks,

Augustus: A two headed Leviathan now a giant octopus. The oceans have become crazy.

(Octopus is defeated)

Jester: I think we have enough seafood to feed all of Kohlingen and Tandoor for a couple of months.

Theresa: I’m sick of seafood now.

Macy: Who wants to eat octopus anyways?

Neo V: Po! Po! Po! Po!

Caeser: I can try it. I’ll eat anything.

Theresa: You used to avoid my dark root porridge.

Caeser: I don’t think it’s just me that avoids dark root porridge. There’s not a single person in camp who can cook that well.

Augustus: Ok. It’s time to open the gate.

(Augustus begins murmuring all the magical incantations he knows. The gate remains sealed despite his best efforts.)

Corydon Deus: Give me your soul. Give me your entire soul. You will now cease to be Augustus. You will now be Corydon Deus incarnated. Then only I can give you the magic powers you need to open this gate.

Augustus: I cannot. My wife, my son, they’ll lose their husband and father. I cannot.

Corydon Deus: Doesn’t matter now what you want; you’re mine now.

Augustus: No! No!

(Augustus is there somewhere hidden deep within his soul. Augustus is now Corydon Deus.)

Corydon Deus: Open now, gate!

(Suddenly the rubble that was blocking the way flies to the side and the massive gate swings open.)

Corydon Deus: Now I can be whole again. Come all of you. You will be my servants in the Fabricius realm and help restore me to my former glory. Then we will come back to this world and bring it to its knees.

(Augustus begins laughing in a strange and maniacal way.)

Caeser: Father, is that you, is something wrong?

Corydon Deus: Yes it’s still me. Sorry I got a little bit carried away there. What I meant to say was “Come let us enter the gate and revive Corydon Deus.”

(The party enters the gate.)

**The Fabricius World**

**The Hunt**

(Once through the gate the party enters a portal which acts as a wormhole through time and space transferring the party to a different dimension. The world of Fabricius is much like the world of Gaia. When the party steps out of the portal there are trees, sky, and small animals. The portal the party exits is located near a lake that sits below a massive waterfall.)

Corydon Deus: Now we must hunt Fabricius. The Fabricius are a despicable form of beast which can be very dangerous when attacked. Once they are defeated they turn into Magicia. I just need a few then I will be able to hunt them on my own.

Jester: What about the treasure?

Corydon Deus: The treasure you can find in their lairs. Now let’s set out from here. Hopefully we can capture a few before nightfall.

(The party is now tasked with walking through a forest in search of Fabricius. As the player walks to the forest they will stumble upon tracks in the ground. If the player follows the tracks they will reach Fabricius.)

(Player reaches Fabricius. Fabricius, whose name is Typhon, upon seeing the humans, gets threatened. He’s a massive creature with wings like a bat, an upper torso like a human, a bottom torso like a snake.)

Typhon: Humans, you come again in our realm ready to make the same mistake you did last time and I see you brought Corydon Deus with you. I suppose you intend to hunt me now but don’t think I’ll go down without a fight.

Caeser: You can speak the common language.

Corydon Deus: Don’t listen to the beast. It is a wicked fiend which must die now.

(Battle Begins)

(After the battle Fabricius turns into the Magicia. Corydon Deus absorbs the Magicia, whose form takes on a strange glowing crystal. After doing Corydon Deus emits a strange glowing aura over his entire body.)

Caeser: Father, that beast was more human in nature and could speak just like us. Are you sure they’re the creatures Corydon Deus has been telling you about? Are you sure we should be doing this? This doesn’t feel right.

Theresa: Did you see the pain in his eyes? I don’t think he had any ill will against us. I think we just murdered that thing.

Jester: Where can I find the loot now?

Corydon Deus: Now we must find its lair by following its trail. Once there you will receive its loot.

Macy: That being was incredibly powerful. Had there been more of them we might have been destroyed. I can see why the ancients coveted their power greatly. I’m fully with you Augustus, please share with me your power.

Caeser: Sorry father, we're going to sit this one out. Continue your hunt. We will set up camp and wait for you.

Corydon Deus: Macy, Jester, shall we continue.

(Theresa, Caeser, Airloft, and Neo V stay at the camp.)

**Slaughter**

(The party leaves the site of the hunt and follows the creature’s tracks leading away from the battle. Eventually they reach the home of Typhon. The home is built underground on the side of a hill. Corydon Deus attempts to open the door but is locked. So he knocks. Echidna, the wife of Typhon, opens the door. Echidna is also half human and half snake. Her upper torso is exposed. Her hair is in curls and extends to her shoulders.

Echidna (Opens the door): Can I help you? Hu…..Humans.

(She tries to close the door, but Augustus prevents her from doing so and breaks in. She grabs her spear.)

Echidna: Child, prepare for battle, humans are here.

(Echidna’s child is a large, multicolored, bird twice the size of an eagle. It can breathe flame.)

Echidna: I can see you met my dear husband. I sense his power coursing through you Corydon Deus. I will now have my revenge.

(Battle begins)

After battle,

Corydon Deus (After absorbing the Magicia.): I am powerful enough now to take them on my own. You two are no longer needed.

Jester: But where’s the treasure you promised me?

Corydon Deus: Your great reward, your most prized possession, is standing right in front you. Feast your eyes on the power emanating from my body. A flame Dragon shoots out from Corydon Deus’ hand and courses through the air around the underground home.

Jester: You deceived me. This wasn’t part of the deal.

Corydon Deus: You have two choices now Jester. You either follow me or you die. The choice is yours.

Macy: I’m with you to the end. When you rule the world, make me your Queen.

(Jester remains quiet, not saying anything.)

Corydon Deus: Now, if you don’t have any further objections from both of you, we shall return to everyone else.

(Corydon Deus reaches camp. During the night Caeser is unable to sleep. While everyone is asleep he sneaks out from camp. Caeser begins searching in the woods.)

Caeser: I must speak with Fabricius to know the truth. Who is Corydon Deus? Why did he destroy the Annals of Time?

(Caeser finds a settlement of Fabricius near a clearing outside the woods. Caeser walks into the camp. Fabricius there immediately attacks him and the player enters into battle. The player must defend every time while Caeser is talking to Fabricius. If the player attacks, Fabricius will use a powerful magic spell which immediately kills Caeser. Eventually the monster will initiate dialogue with Caeser and the battle will end.)

During battle,

Caeser: Wait! I just want to talk!

Morana: I know what you want, human. There is no point talking.

Caeser: My father has been possessed by Corydon Deus. He’s already killed several of you and absorbed your power.

(The monster attacks. Morana is a woman covered in a white fur with ice and wind swirling around her in a cloudy mist)

Morana: What do you want? It was foolish for you to come here and speak with me.

Caeser: I do not want power. I just want to save my father.

(The monster stops attacking.)

Morana: If your motive is love then I can do no more to you. You’re not with Corydon Deus. Those who follow the ways of Corydon Deus do not know love.

Morana: If he is in the clutches of Corydon Deus he is already gone. Corydon Deus is a liar and a deceiver.

(During the time Morana is speaking the camera fades out and begins showing what happened in the past. Morana is the narrator.)

Morana: During the war the Magicia briefly gained access to our world by using the power of the hybrids. There was one hybrid in particular. Her name was Tarrae. Her power was as great as Fabricius. Emperor Gestalt kidnapped this girl and used her power to unlock the gate. Once inside the gate they kidnapped some of us and began doing experiments in order to extract our power. They were successful. We attacked Emperor Gestalt in order to rescue the ones he kidnapped. We almost destroyed him. The Reditus tried to broker a peace treaty using Terrae as an ambassador.

Emperor Gestalt tricked us and the Reditus; He used this opportunity to kill many of my brethren when our guard was down. Then he came to our world and continued his slaughter. I watched this wicked man slaughter my parents before my very eyes and absorb their powers as his very own.  All the adults of the Fabricius distracted Corydon Deus with their lives so their children could hide deep within this world and survive. Thankfully his desire for conquest in your world stopped him from finding and finishing the few remaining of us left. After he was done with the slaughter he left our world and sealed the gate.

Corydon Deus must be intent on reviving his divinity on Gaia. But as you know he is a fake god. His divinity is in name only. He is not the true God.

Caeser: This must be why my father destroyed the Annals of Time. He was trying to hide the truth about Corydon Deus. If Corydon Deus is the false God, then who’s the true God?

Morana: The true God remains quiet and only reveals himself when things become desperate. I sense Corydon Deus is now incredibly powerful with just the few Magicia he has absorbed. It is senseless for us to try to fight him, but you might be able to help Caeser. With our help and the power of the true God you might be able to defeat Corydon Deus.

Caeser: But what of the fate of my father?

Morana: Your father is lost Caeser. Once he gave control of his body to Corydon Deus he and Corydon Deus became one. When Augustus is destroyed, so will Corydon Deus. But the mistakes of the past must not be repeated. When Corydon Deus is once again destroyed he will turn into Magicia. His Magicia must not remain in our world or on Gaia. We must find a way to expel his Magicia from Gaia.

Caeser: The Reditus are known to have many technological wonders quite possibly they have found a way to leave Gaia.

Morana: We don’t have much time. Soon your father will awaken and begin hunting us once more. I will tell what remains of my brethren to leave the land of the Fabricius to your world and hide themselves. I’m giving you my power. You and I will become one and together with the help of the true God we will defeat Corydon Deus once and for all. You must escape this world and find my brethren in your world. Then they will surely aid you as I have.

(Morana blows a giant horn. Lights quickly begin flickering all over the land. Corydon Deus wakes from his slumber when the trumpet is blown. She takes the form of Magicia. Caeser and she became one.)

Corydon Deus: The harvest begins!

(A portal opens in midair and many of the Fabricius escape through the portal while many of the Fabricius begin to make a desperate attack against Corydon Deus.)

(Caeser confronts his father.)

Caeser: Father, Corydon Deus is a fake god. If you’re still there please try to fight him to relinquish the grasp he has over your soul.

(For a moment the grimace of Corydon Deus changes.)

Augustus: Son, there is nothing you can do. You must kill me. Destroy the corruption inside of me. Corydon Deus is an abomination who has deceived us all. He plans to destroy Gaia only for his sole pleasure, nothing more. He doesn’t care about our people or their devotion.  All our worship for all these years has landed on nothing but deaf ears. Unsheathe you sword and fight.

(Corydon Deus retains control)

Corydon Deus: You won’t be hearing anymore from him now. I sense you also have become one with Fabricius, but you cannot win. I’m still superior to you in every way. Why do you love? Release yourself and embrace hate. Your dreams and ambitions; your desire for family-meaningless! The Rediits are my pawns. I shall devour your hopes and feast on your souls.

Theresa: Stay away from him Augustus, I mean Corydon Deus, or I mean whatever demon from hell you are. Our love will defeat you.

Jester: Hey I signed up for booty not this. Part of the thief’s code is you never betray a fellow thief. Betray a thief and get thieved. You my friend are about ready to get your ass thieved.

Airloft: Activating directive one. Entity defined as “Augustus” no longer exists. I must protect Caeser in order to fulfill directive one.

Theresa: Macy, join us. That man is not my father-in-law. He’s a big creep.

Macy: Corydon Deus has promised me something none of you can give. Without vengeance my heart is empty and can only be filled by the all-encompassing power of the true god Corydon Deus.

Caeser: He’s not the true God, he’s a fraud; he only serves himself. If you go with him he will consume you; just as he has consumed everything else. We cannot allow him to destroy Gaia. Not all Reditus is bad. There’s good Reditus and there’s bad Reditus just like there’s good Rediits and bad Rediits. He has no right to judge these people.

Macy: It is my delight to be consumed by him. I wish to be swallowed by the void and feel nothing. I will gladly trade my soul for all-consuming power.

## The Destruction

(Battle begins between Caeser and party versus Augustus and Macy. At the beginning of the battle Augustus’ body begins to transform. Black angel wings burst forth from his body and he screams in agony as they tear through his skin. When he is done transforming he is left in a kneeling with his wings covering his body. When he unfurls his wings he is completely changed. His body has become incredibly muscular and he is doubled in size.)

Corydon Deus: Now you will know death for I am its incarnation. Truth, love, beauty, and meaning will disappear as I purge you into the void.

(The player cannot defeat Corydon Deus. The player can try but eventually no matter what they will lose.

(After the battle)

Corydon Deus: My power is all-consuming. You cannot defeat me. The power of the Fabricius is mine. Now I shall completely, utterly, destroy you Caeser.

Neo V: Po! Po!

(A great surge of lightning flies forth from Corydon Deus’ hand in the direction of Caeser. Theresa seeing this quickly runs and jumps in front of the lightning and suffers a grievous injury which burns a hole through her chest.)

Jester: Why you coward! He begins throwing knives at Corydon Deus which momentarily distracts him.

Airloft: I am unable to heal her wound in the present circumstance. Caeser, for your safety we must go immediately. Grab onto me.

(Caesar takes Theresa in his hands.)

Caeser: Theresa, look at me. Don’t close your eyes. Airloft is going to carry us out of here.

Theresa: Silly boy, you can’t hold onto me with one hand and hold on to Airloft with the other. You must go back to camp. Tell them what you saw here; save my family, otherwise my death will be in vain.

(A small voice whispers inside the mind of Caeser.)

???: Caeser, you must let go of her. You’re the savior of Gaia. Thousands of people are depending on you. You must quickly hold onto Airloft.

Theresa: Get out from here. I have enough strength to make a distraction for you guys to get out here.

(Theresa finds enough strength to get up. She pulls her bow aiming at Corydon Deus.)

Theresa: Hey Augustus, you’re a really shady father-in-law you know.

(Theresa lets loose an arrow, but Corydon Deus stops it in midair and begins turning it around towards Theresa.)

Caeser: Jester, Neo, Let’s go! Grab onto Airloft!

(Caesar grabs onto Airloft. Airloft lifts up. Caeser’s feet are dangling above the ground. Jester grabs on to Caesar’s calves. Airloft continues to lift up. Neo grabs onto Jester’s calves. Airloft begins to struggle to lift them up.)

Airloft: You have exceeded my weight capacity. It is not possible for me to progress further.

(Suddenly a powerful force begins blowing Airloft upwards. The party begins flying towards the portal through which Fabricius have escaped through.)

Corydon Deus: Such a zest for life, such a spark I must snuff out. We could’ve done great things Theresa. I would’ve made you lady in waiting to my Queen. Here you die.

(He causes the arrow which he took control of to fly into Theresa’s head. She dies immediately.)

(The world of the Fabricius begins to shake and slowly disintegrate as the entire world is being sucked into a giant power vacuum with Corydon Deus at the center of it. Just before the entire world of the Fabricius is absorbed by Corydon Deus, Caesar and Jester escape to through the portal which takes them to the gate of the Fabricius before the world of the Fabricius disappears into nothing.

Caesar reaches the surface. Suddenly the sky darkens and the moon turns to blood. Then a giant beam of energy propels itself from the moon into Gaia’s crust and continues to exert great force heating up Gaia’s oceans. The water levels begin to drop.

The immense amount of energy in the water begins to affect Caesar’s Navem ship. The navigation controls malfunction and the ship begins to speed up heading towards the coast. Caesar tries as hard as he can to regain control of the ship, but is unable to direct its course.

Caeser: Everyone brace yourself!

Jester: I’ll never steal again I swear. Unless it’s really really lucrative and it means I won’t have to work for the rest of my life.

(Neo is still holding onto Airloft.)

Airloft: There is a 99% chance we’re not going to survive according to our velocity and ship’s stability.

(The ship crashes into coastal rocks. Jester, Caesar, and Neo wake up lying on the beaches near Tonsorem Castle. Airloft is hovering above them.)

Airloft: I was able to administer first-aid while you were unconscious. You are expected to make 100% recovery.

Caeser: Where are we? Are you okay Jester? Neo, how are you?

Neo V: Po! Po! Po!

Jester: How in the hell did we survive that. I was sure we were going to die, but suddenly that force lifted us up. Something very mysterious just happened.

Caeser: The true God.

Jester: What?

Caeser: Nevermind. Theresa. Oh, my Theresa. She’s gone.

???: She’s alive.

Jester: That evil bastard. Just give me power; enough power to slice his throat. She was an angel. Caesar, I’ll go to the ends of the earth to help bring justice to your sweet Theresa.

Airloft: We are in close proximity to Tonsorem castle. We should head that direction and seek aid.

Jester: That’s Reditus territory.

Caeser: I will tell them what happened. I don’t expect them to trust me, but I plan to help them with all my might to stop Corydon Deus. I care little even if they arrest me. I must do something.

Jester: Then off we go.

(Dazed and stumbling Caesar makes his way inland with the blood red moon hanging like crescent death over the black sky.)

# Tonsorem Castle

## Party Enters the Town Outside Tonsorem Castle

(Caesar enters Tonsorem castle with the people running around scared and crazy.)

Jester: I was blinded by greed. I was unable to see Augustus’s true ambition. I thought he was just some religious nut with delusions of grandeur. Now this is happened because I wanted treasure.

Caeser: My love for my father drowned out all voices of reason. I should’ve stopped him before things got out of control.

Jester: Don’t let Theresa’s death be in vain. We must stop him.

Caeser: The only way we can stop him is if the Reditus help us.

Jester: Then we came to the perfect place. This is the capital of the Reditus.

## Tonsorem Castle Npcs

Scholar: They say in our legends that when the moon turns blood red the world is ending.

Armor shopkeeper: End of the world discount, 5% on everything off. Drop-dead rates when we’re all going to drop-dead.

Signboard man: See I told you so. The world’s going to end.

Enamored man: (Talking to a girl) Do you know what the one thing I want to do before we both die.

-Then-

Hesitant girl: (Girl responds) Ummmmm……. Tell your mother you love her?

Hesitant girl: If this guy thinks we’re going to do something before he dies he’s got something else coming to him.

Priest: Do you Steve, before the end of the world, promise to take care of your wife and cherish her for the next couple days? Do you Clarice, promise to hold and cherish your husband for the next couple days or maybe till this evening?

Steve: I do.

Clarice: I do.

Fashionable woman: End of the world weddings are in vogue. I’ve attended five weddings today.

Fat man: I’m going to eat all the Jell-O pudding I can before Corydon Deus gets it all.

Guard: I have two days to check off all the things I want to do on my to-do list. I was thinking I had my entire life ahead of me.

Teacher: Now students, what do we do when Corydon Deus comes to kill us? Are we scared of the bad man?

Student: I’m scared.

Student: My teacher’s off her rocker. Since the moon turned blood red she started writing thank you notes to all of us and giving us candy. Shouldn’t she have been doing this all along?

Kings Maid: King Eduardus is a hopeless romantic. He has the most beautiful wife as queen yet he still has eyes on me. He so old now too, but that doesn’t slow him down.

Kings Cook: Terrae cannot have children. Her hybrid nature, being both Fabricius and human, prevents her from doing so. That didn’t stop King Eduardus though. There’s some of his bastards running around the city.

## The Castle

(Caeser approaches the castle gate waiting to get in.)

Guard: King Eduardus has decreed that no one is allowed in the castle.

The Crowd: The end is upon us. Please take our children! Corydon Deus has returned and we’re all going to die.

(Caeser and party reach the front of the crowd.)

Caeser: I have a letter from Adm. Anthony! Let us in.

The Guard: Let me see that. (He looks it over.) Yes, this is genuine, but how did you get this. This must be the one that was stolen. All of you come with me into the castle.

(Another high-ranking guard meets them.)

Reditus Commander: How did you get this letter?

Jester: We stole it.

Caeser: But we came here to give it back. Actually we have vital information regarding what’s happening right now. I’m the son of the man who revived Corydon Deus. My father, who is now Corydon Deus, killed my wife, and absorbed an incredible amount of Magicias. As you can see, he once again threatens the existence of Gaia, so we came here to help you stop him.

Reditus Commander: (He turns to Airloft.) Is what he says true drone?

Airloft: I do not detect an increase of heart rate. Nor do I sense of movement in his body which would indicate lying. He is telling the truth.

Reditus Commander: Follow me.

(The Reditus commander takes the party to the king chambers.)

Reditus Commander: You will wait here until the king arrives shortly.

(10 seconds pass and then the king walks in.)

King Eduardus: Who are these riffraff?

Reditus Commander: They have quite a story to tell. Now you may speak.

(Caesar begins to reiterate whatever he told the commander.)

King Eduardus: If what you say is true then history repeats itself. I must speak to the Queen.

Caeser: My Lord I must show you something also. The Fabricius sensed my pure intentions and decided to help me. I can also cast magic now.

(Caeser holds a fireball in his hand.)

Caeser: Many escaped to Gaia before Corydon Deus sent their world to the void. We must find them. They will help us.

King Eduardus: You will wait here. I will be back.

(The player now controls King Eduardus.)

## Terrae

(We find Terrae standing in front of her father’s grave with the blood red moon in the background. Theresa senses Eduardus’ presence)

Terrae: My father’s murderer has returned.

(Terrae is young and beautiful while Eduardus is old with a graybeard. She holds his hand.)

Terrae: It brings me great pain to see you get old my dear, but the Fabricius nature inside of me exerts some anti-aging properties.

Eduardus: It’s a great privilege of mine to have the most beautiful Reditus as my wife.

Terrae: You flatter me. Now tell me about the man whose soul is joined with the Fabricius standing in your chambers.

Eduardus: So you sensed the Magicia coursing through him?

Terrae: As I sense Corydon Deus whose throne now resides on the moon. He must think that we cannot reach him there.

Eduardus: We have a surprise for him.

Terrae: Let’s meet that young man. I sense a great power rising against this castle.

Eduardus: His father is now Corydon Deus.

Terrae: Then we share the same pain.

(Eduardus and Terrae meet Caeser.)

Terrae: I also lost a father to Corydon Deus. That leech stole his very essence. I would’ve done the same if I were you, Caesar. I would’ve followed my father to the ends of the earth, but this situation presents us with an opportunity to rid us of Corydon Deus forever. The Heremus has been a blight on Gaia for long enough. The Heremus has not healed with the rest of the world because the source of its corruption rested deep within twisting the creatures and eating its source of life. But now the source of the corruption is gone. The blight has spread to the moon and will attempt to suppress us there out of fear of repeating history again. He knows his time is short. We will launch him into space never to be seen again. Your people will finally find the redemption they’ve so longed for but have been unable to find; freedom from Corydon Deus. This is true freedom for your people Caeser.

Caeser: Did you people place the high priest over us to cull our population?

Eduardus: That corrupt man played both sides. He did whatever it took to remain in power. He sent men needlessly into the Heremus to die so that he could have his way with the widows. He wrote your religion as he went. We left the Annals of Time as a testament to the corruption of Corydon Deus. We hoped the high priest would teach you people about what really happened. He suppressed the truth for his own benefit. Only when he felt his authority was being threatened did he call us. Our intention was for your people to live peacefully there and eventually forsake your fake god on your own and return to society. Our mercy backfired, but as Terrae said, this will work out for the good.

(A messenger rushes in the room.)

Soldier: Sir! Come and see this, the moon, it’s……..

(The party rushes outside. The moon has become an orange ball of fire. Suddenly the sky trembles. A loud sound resounds across Gaia and is like that of rushing water. The sound trails a blinding light which is already burned through the atmosphere and is running across the land incinerating everything in its path. The burning light is heading towards Tonsorem Castle.)

Eduardus: That light is heading towards the castle. We must escape.

Terrae: It’s too late, find cover.

???: Let go Caeser.

Caeser: I feel immense power growing inside of me. Everyone get back.

(Suddenly the spirit of Morana hovers above Caesar’s body. She opens her mouth and begins to blow ice into the path of the fire that’s coming from the moon. The fire continues its path until it slowly finds itself freezing and melting; freezing and melting, until finally progresses no further. Then out from the flame monsters begin emerging. Many head towards the landing pad where many Reditus drop ships are located. They begin tearing off the wings and biting through the metal completely destroying the Reditus air fleet. Many soldiers with guns and swords rush towards monsters. They drop many of the creatures. Some are cut in two. The fire from the moon stops, but the battle rages on.)

(The Chancellor enters the room.)

Chancellor: King Eduardus, take the Queen and leave immediately. Our fleet has been destroyed but you can still go by Land Walker to Ehsran and rendezvous with Adm. Anthony. Our forces are consolidating there. At any moment we may be overrun. I will hold the castle as long as possible against these devils.

King Eduardus: No, I will stay and fight.

Chancellor: You will stay and die now all of you go. The land Walker is waiting for you outside the keep. We will clear the way for your escape.

## The Road to Ehsran

(The situation is more dire than expected and the party must fight enemies to reach the Land Walker. Once they reached the Land Walker cannons from the walls begin firing in the horde of monsters clearing the way so the Walker can get through. The Walker clears the gate. The Walker itself has small cannons which fire desperately into the horde. One smaller monster jumps onto the Walker and begins spitting acid melting a small hole into the top turret. Augustus pulls out a sword and stabs it in the head through the whole. He pulls down his sword and the monster flies off onto the ground kicking up a large cloud of dust when it lands.)

Jester: How about a monster shish kebab. Caesar is serving.

King Eduardus: (He is driving Land Walker) We’re almost clear.

(Suddenly a large flying monster lands in their path. It looks like a giant praying mantis with a lizard face that walks upright and has wings. The faces of Fabricius make up the mesh of its skin.)

Terrae: He seems to have created that monster by combining the flesh of different Fabricius. I can feel their screams as the monster’s flesh moves and contorts.

Caeser: We will kill this abomination.

(The battle begins.)

(This battle is unlike other battles. Instead of the battle taking place between the party and a group of monsters, the player fights as the Land Walker against the giant monster.)

(After Battle the player receives the magicia, Monstrosa, and is given the option to save)

King Eduardus: The way is clear.

(He begins driving.)

Terrae: We must reach Ehsran castle. Adm. Anthony must have a dropship we could commandeer to find the remaining Fabricius who escaped to this world.

Caeser: How are these monsters materializing? It’s almost as if they appear from nothing.

Jester: I think I saw my ex-wife in the flesh that massive monster we just killed.

Airloft: The probability of that happening is 1%.......

Jester: You don’t know my ex-wife. When she’s angry, she’s uglier than that creature.

Neo V: Po po!

Terrae: The revival of Corydon Deus and his absorption of the Fabricius power are creating an imbalance in the order of the universe. This corruption is causing matter to distort; hence, the creation of monsters. The large beam coming from the moon is only accelerating this imbalance.

Eduardus: Speaking of imbalance that beam is coming our way. We must make haste to Ehsran castle.

(The player now has control of the Land Walker in any battles the player fights will be from within the machine on land. When the player reaches an isthmus, the map changes from the over world view, to a dungeon view. The player as they drive is surrounded by beaches on both flanks. The beam from the moon can be seen agitating the waters near them. Suddenly monsters begin to materialize from the ocean. The player must fight three battles from monsters as they come from the ocean. After the third battle dialogue begins.)

Eduardus: We’re surrounded.

Terrae: We tried. We tried everything in our might, but they’re too strong.

Airloft: I can detect a signal being transmitted from one single monster. If we defeat the signal emitter then all the other monsters might retreat.

Jester: They have a hive mind.

(Three Land Walkers break through the ring of monsters currently surrounding our party.)

Terrae: The Ehsran Calvary! We’re saved.

(There commander can be heard speaking over the microphone.)

Reditus Commander: King Eduardus, looks like you could need a little help here?

King Eduardus: Yes, you came just in the nick of time. We believe this group of monsters follows a hive mind. We located the hive emitter on your radar. Fight your way to their leader.

Reditus Commander: Over and out.

(A tactical battle begins. I must come up with way to make this battle strategic.)

# Ehsran

## The Siege

(Ceaser and his party arrive in Ehsran only to find it under attack. Ehsran is the most technologically advanced city on Gaia. Its walls are heavily fortified with laser cannons. Caesar must sneak his way through the forces that are currently surrounding Ehsran.)

Caeser: Hey Jester, you think these monsters can tell the difference between a human acting like a monster and a monster.

Jester: That’s a good idea. We’ll just kill a few stealthily and then make an outfit to look like a monster. Hey Eduardus, let’s see your best monster face.

Eduardus: (Starts making sounds like a monster.)

Terrae: Owww! That’s scary.

Airloft: These creatures do seem to display minimal intelligence readings. Your plan has a 50% chance of working.

Caeser: So what we’re going to do is go back into the wilderness. Find some monsters, kill them, and try to make the best monster costume possible. Then come back here.

Terrae: Okay, this might get us through the siege, what about when we reach the castle wall. We’re going to be dressed like monsters. They’ll shoot us on-site.

Eduardus: There is a secret entrance to Ehsran Castle. It’s located in the moat. We must infiltrate the camp and wait for an attack. Then, when the attack happens, during the confusion, jump in the moat. I will sally into the monster camp. Its better I go and meet with Adm. Anthony. As King this is my responsibility.

Terrae: The man I married is a monster. You can surely imitate one as well.

Eduardus: (He laughs.)

## Monster Suit

(The player will have to choose which random battles they wish to fight because once three battles are completed they will have to choose how to piece together their monster costume. So at this point of time each random battle should contain only one monster. The monster they defeat will be the skin they have to piece together.

Once the player has all the skins they need they return to Ehsran castle. Then So the player has to choose the best outfit for the best character imitating a monster to get the best result. Having the best options for imitating a monster will open up new dialogue and loot options as they attempt to get through the siege.)

## Options for Best Monster Design

When the player enters the camp they will be notified that they have to do monster things to get loot. These options are available:

1. Eating the flesh from dead bodies. The player receives high value loot.
2. Roaring. The player receives medium value loot if done beside certain monsters.
3. Putting fire wood under boiling pots which contain human prisoners. The player receives high value loot.

## Options for Any Other Monster Design

1. Roaring. The player receives medium value loot if done beside certain monsters.
2. Use a whip to torture prisoners. The whip can be first picked up off the ground. (Receive low value loot.)
3. Light dead bodies on fire. Torches can be picked up near the bodies. (Receive low value loot.)

## The Monster Attack

(The player should be given ample amount of time to run around and do monster things within the camp. Based upon testing, we will decide how much time to give the player. When their time is finished a monster will blow a horn.)

Monster Leader: Geeeeeettttt aroundz meez you loootss. All you lootss are going to run and try to break down these walls. Killz dese humans. When I blow dis horn. Yous cross the moat, run at the wall, and start piling up until you can get over this wall. Get ready.

(The entire monster horde starts growling in unison as they get ready to charge.)

Eduardus: Waaaaarrrrlllll!

(When the player reaches the water and goes inside the game switches to 2D side scroller view. Laser beams are going through the water and the player has to dodge these beams. We can add other random stuff which the player has to dodge like man eating fish.)

# Eshran Castle

## Eduardus Arrives

Guard: Halt!

Eduardus: I’m human, I snuck through the siege. I’m here to meet Adm. Anthony.

(The guard gets closer then realizes its King Eduardus.)

Guard: King Eduardus! It’s you. Come. I’ll take you to Adm. Anthony.

(Guard leads the king Eduardus to Adm. Anthony and vice Adm. Constantine. Both kneel before the king)

Adm. Anthony: King Eduardus, how did you?! I’m completely shocked.

Eduardus: Arise both of you. We have no time for formalities. I need a drop ship.

Vice Adm. Constantine: The monsters have captured the airport. Flying monsters came over the walls. We have made several attempts to capture it but have been repulsed several times.

Adm. Anthony: The monsters are everywhere. All our messengers that went out to other Reditus cities were intercepted. We’re completely isolated.

Eduardus: There is hope. The Fabricius are working with us. They are working through a young man named Caeser. His father was possessed by Corydon Deus after he foolishly revived him.

Adm. Anthony: It is our fault to allow that high priest to rule over those people. He used to cull the population just for his own benefit. We never thought they’d actually succeed in reaching Corydon Deus.

Eduardus: It seems they had help from the Felnis we used to hunt.

Vice Adm. Constantine: Another mistake of ours.

Eduardus: First things first, we capture the airport, break the siege, and unite the Reditus. Order your men to begin the assault.

(Adm. Anthony turns to one of his men. He gives him a message. Then that man hurriedly runs away.)

Adm. Anthony: How’s the Queen?

Eduardus: As beautiful as the first day I saw her, literally. She hasn’t aged a bit. Look at me. What’s she doing married to my smelly goat ass?

Adm. Anthony and Vice Adm. Constantine laugh.

(Adm. Anthony and vice Adm. Constantine temporarily joined the party.)

## Airport

(When the party enters the airport there are already Ehsran troops and monsters fighting. If the player wants to they can help out some of the soldiers fighting.)

Ehsran soldier: Thanks King Eduardus!

(This dungeon has several conveyor belts which the player must change the course of correctly in order to progress within the dungeon. The boss of the area is a monster who is half robot half wolf.)

Android Fenrir: Master joined me with robots, such delightful creativity. Prepare to meet Corydon Deus.

(After battle the player receives the magicia Android Fenrir)

Adm. Anthony: Take that you foul beast. I slay you in the name of General Leonidas.

Eduardus: The fact that Corydon Deus has been revived sullies the memory of your father.

Adm. Anthony: Once we lift the siege I have a favor to ask of you. If you are successful in this endeavor you will give my father a chance to vindicate his name.

Eduardus: Yes, the siege. It seems the monsters are limitless in strength and numbers. Their ability to redistribute their numbers seems to be drawn from their leader. If we kill the leader then the source of strength will be gone. The leaders are somehow connected to Corydon Deus. The leader’s essence draws the source of their strength from the many Fabricius bound together in one single united flesh. This creature uses this united magic power to spawn new devils.

Adm. Anthony: You say this young man has the power of the Fabricius indwelling in him. We shall sally forth from our castle and from the air with our drop ships and press the attack against the monster hordes. At the same time, the young man...

Eduardus: Caeser…

Adm. Anthony: Caeser, will attack from behind. Hopefully our attack will be enough distraction for Caeser to kill the leader.

Eduardus: I shall use the same outfit as before and sneak through the camp at night.

Adm. Anthony: Excellent, I shall meet you in the middle the battlefield tomorrow. We shall begin our assault together once our laser cannons begin firing.

(The camera fades out and fades in. Eduardus is meeting Caeser and the party.)

## Siege Lifted

(The following day early in the morning the assault begins. The laser cannons from the castle walls begin targeting the enemy positions. The metallic drawbridge extends over the moat using a mechanism. The gate opens and Reditus troops charge forth.)

Terrae: Caeser, this is your chance to have vengeance on Corydon Deus for the death of our loved ones. May the Fabricius inside of you guide us to victory!

???: Soon I will show myself to you in an unmistakable way.

(The party must make their way through the enemy camp. They can set free human prisoners on the way. The prisoners will give them an item for setting them free.)

Prisoner: Ehsran forever! Here take this....

(The enemy leader is located in a tent to the farther south in the camp. Several monsters that remain in the camp will see and engage the party as they make their way south.)

(The player reaches enemy leader.)

Bahamut: I will receive a glorious reward from Corydon Deus for tearing out the Fabricius inside of you.

Caeser: After defeating you I will only absorb your power and use it for the liberation of Gaia.

(After the battle the player receives the Magicia, Bahamut)

Terrae: I can no longer hear their screams. They are at peace now. I wonder, after we release the Fabricius, where do they go? Do they go into the void? Or some other place not known to man?

???: They enter the realm of the Stilling.

Caeser: I don’t know where they go. I thought all living beings went to Corydon Deus.

Jester: This conversation is a little too deep for me. Look, all the monsters are disintegrating slowly. They’re being reabsorbed into Gaia.

Eduardus: Our plan worked. Let’s meet Adm. Anthony in the castle.

(The camera fades out and fades in.)

Adm. Anthony: What’s the plan now?

Caeser: We’ll find the Fabricius remaining in the world. Then we’ll go to the moon and take on Corydon Deus.

Adm. Anthony: I have one request before you do this. Bring back to life my father Leonidas. Corydon Deus and Leonidas ate at the same table. They both served Emperor Gestalt. My father was an honorable man. Deep down inside he disagreed with the Emperor’s lust for power. During the great betrayal of the Fabricius my father opposed Corydon Deus. Corydon Deus’ power was greatly enhanced at the time by extracting Magicia from the Fabricius. He defeated my father in a duel. I want nothing more than justice to be served to Corydon Deus by the hands of my father.

Terrae: There is only one Fabricius who has the power to do this.

Adm. Anthony: I know. The Fabricius Phoenix, an ancient bird possessed by flame, who, if defeated in battle, will grant its power of resurrection to the author of its defeat.

Eduardus: Do you know where we can find Phoenix?

Adm. Anthony: There is a cave that goes deep into the heart of a volcano north of Magus Village. Speak to Gustav the magician in the village. He is the only one who knows how to reach the cave. If it’s true what you say about the Fabricius escaping before being absorbed by Corydon Deus, then the Fabricius Phoenix is definitely hiding there.

(The player is allowed to explore Ehsran castle. When they’re ready to go the player must enter the Reditus dropship. The Reditus dropship will automatically be flown to the Island of Magus. The player is not allowed to freely roam yet. On the way to the island the player is treated with a spectacle of fire rays bursting through the atmosphere burning up the oceans and land.)

## Eshran Castle Npc

(1)Ehsran citizen: Our technology has saved the day. Not even Corydon Deus could stand up against our knowledge of manipulating Gaia’s minerals.

(2)Caeser: It was the Fabricius who saved you nothing else.

Ehsran citizen: The Fabricius are just a fairytale.

Ehsran Bar dancer: Adm. Anthony comes to the bar often. He’s so handsome, but his mood is always somber. He needs a good lap dance that’s all. Mama can hook him up nice and easy.

(1)Ehsran Bar dancer 2: King Eduardus, meeting you is a dream comes true.

(2)King Eduardus: Likewise beautiful vixen.

(3)Terrae: Edgar.....if you know what’s good for you….

(4)King Eduardus: I meant this bar is like a beautiful vixen.

Ehsran bartender: In honor of you Caeser, for delivering Ehsran from Corydon Deus. We started selling salad named after you. I call it the Caeser Salad.

(Two children play sword fighting in the street.)

Wannabe Soldier 1: One day, I’m going to grow up to be like Adm. Anthony.

Wannabe Soldier 2: No, I’m going to be Adm. Anthony. You’re going to be vice Adm. Constantine. Then I’ll give you orders all the time. I’ll tell you to go into my office and clean my toilet.

(1)Grandmother: My son was lost in the siege; captured by the monsters. I heard the monsters did horrible things to the prisoners. You know anything about that?

(2)Eduardus: Nope. Never been a monster. I don’t know anything about torturing prisoners as a monster.

# Phoenix

## Gustav the Magician

(A young child dressed in a black top hat and black cape greets Terrae and Eduardus with open arms.)

Minard: Welcome saviors of Magus. My father commissioned me to create paintings of you in his home in remembrance of your great deeds for the people of Magus. He spent days recalling his memories of you while I painstakingly conjured your images. Happy to say I was incredibly close. Come quickly to our home. My father will be delighted to meet you.

(They follow Minard to his home.)

Gustav the Magician: Ah! The saviors! Do you remember me? I was just a young man then. My home was burning and you destroyed the source of the fire consuming it. Now because of you my son’s inheritance remains intact.

Terrae: Yes I remember. I almost died that day from debris.

Gustav the Magician: What brings you to Magus in such dire times?

Eduardus: We wish to descend into the great volcano to the north.

Gustav the Magician: So you came to me for help to find it.

Terrae: Yes, we come on behalf of a friend who desires justice.

Gustav the Magician: I sense magic in this one. (He looks at Caeser.)

Caeser: The Fabricius live inside of me.

Gustav the Magician: So you can cast magic like the ancients. Will you share this power? I always wanted to be like my father. I’m tired of peddling allusions for the amusement of tourists.

Caeser: Come with us and you shall sunder the heavens.

Gustav the Magician: That’s what I’m talking about. I covered the cave a long time ago with a device that projects an illusion to prevent people from going inside the cave due to the extreme temperatures found inside. It is voice activated so it will shut off on my command. You do have a plan to survive the heat inside, correct?

Caeser: The Fabricius will open the way.

Gustav the Magician: I’ll grab my top hat and coat and we’ll be on our way.

Minard: Father, what about me? I don’t want to stay here greeting tourists. Let me come with you.

Gustav the Magician: No you’ll stay here. That’s final.

(Gustav the Magician joins the party)

## Leonidas‘s Grave

Terrae: General Leo…….

Eduardus: May you rest in peace mighty warrior.

## Magus Npcs Again

## Outside Fiery Cave

(The party leaves the home, but Minard follows behind once they leave. The party travels north to the cave.)

Gustav the Magician: Abracadabra!

Jester: Is that it? I was expecting a better password than that.

Gustav the Magician: It’s what I say whenever I present an illusion. So I guess it’s fitting.

(The illusion doesn’t remove itself.)

Gustav the Magician: Abracadabrae! (Some time goes by.) It seems I’ve forgotten the password. I guess I was in a different mind then when I made it. It’s been years since I’ve come here to open the way.

Jester: A forgetful magician.

Neo: Po!

Gustav the Magician: Regardless, I foresaw this a long time ago knowing my forgetful nature. I made a way to remind myself of the password lest I forget it. There should be a challenge question engraved on one of the stones around here.

(Player has to check stones)

Challenge question: The full name of your son?

Gustav the Magician: Even I don’t remember his full name. I always just call him Mino. We should go back to the village and find his birth certificate.

Caeser: You have to be kidding me.

Gustav the Magician: The first place we should go is the village elder of Magus. He keeps all the birth certificates.

## Say My Name Quest

Gustav the Magician: Hello Elder, I need to see Mino’s birth certificate. I seem to have forgotten his full name again.

Village Elder: Gustav, you’d forget your head if it wasn’t attached you. I keep all these documents in the basement. At present though there are strange creatures lurking there. Since fire started coming down from the moon monsters have started appearing everywhere. I think whatever small creatures that were already there in my basement have mutated, especially the rats. The rats are now the size of dogs with festering blisters containing pus. I ran for my life when I saw them and you won’t convince me to go down there again. Here are the keys to the cellar. May Gaia have mercy on us all.

Caeser: We’ll clean your basement of those rats so you may live without fear.

Village Elder: That’s worth more than all the money in Gaia.

(Player finds birth certificate.)

Jester: I’m going to tattoo Minard Joseph Charles to your forehead. I bet you’re the kinda of guy who forgets to lock his front door as well.

Terrae: I knew I smelt a thief.

Jester: Once the thief, always a thief, even if it’s the end of the world.

Eduardus: It’s not the end of the world yet. As long as King Eduardus lives thou shalt know deliverance for I am the Savior of Gaia. Repent of your ways petty thief.

Jester: If you’re the Savior of the world then I’m a priest.

Caeser: I will save the world and bring redemption to many. It was prophesied by our Seer before we left. Many of her words of come true so far. The nations will tremble, its foundations shaken, but I will remain firmly determined to end Corydon Deus and his lies while saving my father as well. Follow me.

Jester: Now he has a savior complex.

Terrae: Get ready everyone we have company.

(A giant rat whose body is completely on fire attacks the party.)

(The player goes back upstairs.)

Village Elder: Ahh you’re back.

Caeser: Yes we cleaned your cellar of the monsters. Its leader we slayed. You should keep a cat down there.

Village Elder: I will after you deliver us all from Corydon Deus. Thank you.

## Outside Fiery Cave Revisited

(When the party arrives the player can see Minard dillydallying around. When Minard sees the party he quickly hides.)

Gustav the Magician: Now, time for the password; Minard Joseph Charles.

(The illusion disappears. The cave is located high above the ground.)

Jester: How we going to climb up there?

Gustav the Magician: That’s why I have this hidden. (He finds a Bush and takes out a rope attached to a grappling hook. He throws the grappling hook and it takes hold. The player can climb up now. Once the player enters the cave Minard climbs behind them.)

## Fiery Cave

(The fiery cave is full of magma pools. Smoke sifts through the air. Floating stalactites float down rivers of magma. The air is suffocating. Morana leaves Caeser’s body and floats above him.

Morana: I will bring down the temperature so the path will be clear for you.

(The fiery haze is reduced in the path of the player. There are moving stalactites the player must jump across to cross the rivers of magma.)

(The player reaches Phoenix.)

Phoenix: Terrae, it’s been a long time. I suppose there’s someone you wish to bring back to life; someone who has unfinished business here in the world of the living. It is so?

Terrae: Yes, a man whose heart was as valiant as a mighty lion. Who, despite my unfortunate circumstance, showed so much kindness to me treating me as a daughter.

Phoenix: Then you know what must be done.

Terrae: Show us your great power O mighty Phoenix!

Phoenix: Engarde!

## Battle With Phoenix

(In the beginning of the battle with Phoenix, Phoenix’s heat blast pushes away Morana.)

Caeser: The heat is too great now! We won’t survive!

(The parties health starts decreasing gradually as the battle goes on in large portions until everyone’s health reaches 1.)

Minard: While you guys were battling I had time to sketch Morana.

(Minard uses his sketch ability to copy the ability of Morana causing the heat around them to reduce. Their health is restored.)

Minard: I told you I could do more than greet tourists. Now let’s clip this bird’s wings.

(Minard joins the party.)

(After defeating the Phoenix, the Phoenix flies into the air above the island from the opening of the volcano and bursts into a giant ball of fire which illuminates the entire sky. His ashes fall to the ground, and as they slowly fall to the ground, they slowly materialize in the form Leonidas and a piece of Magicia. The player received the Magicia Phoenix.)

(The party meets Leonidas outside.)

Terrae: How was the underworld?

Leonidas: Doom and gloom.

Terrae: It’s not the right place for you. Nice to have you back.

Leonidas: Suppose you called me back to Corydon Deus’ ass.

Terrae: Your son thought it a fitting vindication.

Leonidas: I’ve been waiting in the gloom many years hoping to restore my honor. Where is the coward?

Terrae: On the Moon.

Leonidas: A coward’s move. He thinks we won’t be able to reach him there.

Eduardus: We have a device which will propel us to the moon.

Leonidas: Things have changed while I’ve been gone. Let’s stop by the village of Magus.

Eduardus: Your sword is there. It’s been waiting for you there faithfully the entire time.

Leonidas: It must be thirsty. I shall whet its thirst with the blood of Corydon Deus.

(Party walks ahead)

Caeser: I wish Phoenix could raise more than one person.

Terrae: Father……

Caeser: Theresa……

Terrae: There’s a legend that there’s a mystical, invisible being that holds our loved ones for us in an invisible realm. Maybe when our work is done here we won’t need the power of the Phoenix to bring them back.

Caeser: It spoke of the Stillness……

Terrae: What?

Caeser: Nothing……

# Leonidas Sword

(When the party arrives at Leonidas’ grave his sword is missing.)

Eduardus: I could have sworn the sword was here when we came.

Terrae: It’s stolen.

Jester: What a petty thief, stealing a sword used for righteous causes.

Caeser: I don’t think it was stolen by a human. See the tracks.

Airloft: Using my tracking sensors I’m able to detect the nature of the footprints and their direction. I shall highlight them as we go.

(The player follows the tracks until they lead out of the village. In the overworld map the tracks lead to the coastline and then disappear.)

Jester: We have ourselves a ghost.

Caeser: The monster must’ve flown.

Leonidas: I shall have the pleasure of beating him with my bare hands.

Eduardus: I shall teach that monster the virtues of not stealing.

Jester: I don’t think that monsters going to listen to you.

(Suddenly a drone appears before them and displays a holographic message.)

Note: Eduardus, meet me on the mountain. We have a coin to flip.

Caeser: I think that monster knows how to write.

Eduardus: That monsters my brother, Sabini. He must have learned about our little quest. He wants in on the fun too. That mountain is West of Tonsorem. We can reach there by dropship. Until then, you’ll just have to fight by hand Leonidas.

Leonidas: It’s like declawing a lion. Please return my sword.

Eduardus; Caeser it’s up to you now. If you want to go directly to Corydon Deus speak to me in the dropship and I’ll tell you my plan. Otherwise, off we go, there’s Fabricus to capture and my brother to find.

## Mt. Kohl

(At the base of Mount Kohl)

Eduardus: Did I tell you my brother Sabini is a kung fu master.

Terrae: Wannabe kung fu master. He’ll never be as great as master Mas Oyama.

Caeser: How do you become King and him a kung fu master?

Eduardus: Sabini read too many Bruce Lee books as a child. So he left home at a young age hoping to live as an aesthetic studying the arts of kung fu.

Caeser: Bruce Lee?

Eduardus: He was a famous brawler in Tonsorem. He specialized in drunken martial arts, often fighting in the local tavern for the entertainment of others. He spent the rest of his free time writing of his exploits. I suspect most of his exploits weren’t true, but it corrupted the mind of Sabini and distracted him from his official duties. Once we find Sabini I expect he’ll try to fight us to test his martial arts prowess. He is strong, but I suggest letting him win, so as not to hurt his ego. He does have Leonidis’ sword.

(When the party reaches the summit of Mt. Kohl a muscular figure with his shirt off and his gray hair blowing in the wind can be seen looking out into the distance.)

Sabini: I see you got my message.

(A bird comes and sits on his shoulder.)

Sabini: Spending so much time in nature I’ve learned to communicate with the animals. They have taught me different forms of kung fu. There is the cobra strike (Sabini takes the cobra strike form), the monkey strike (Sabini takes the monkey strike form), and more. I suggest a dual. If I win I go with you. If you win take Leonidis’ sword with you. Are you ready?

If yes, Sabini: Hi-yah! **(**Battle begins.)

If no, Sabini: You came all this way only to turn back. Speak to me when you’re ready.

If player defeats Sabini,

Sabini: All my training has been for nothing. I’ve been defeated by my brother; one who does not devote himself to training. I will now live in shame. Here, take the sword.

Leonidis: Finally, my beautiful sword comes back to daddy.

If player is defeated by Sabini,

Sabini: Hi-yah! I’ve defeated you pathetic losers with my superior training in martial arts prowess. Feel the might of Sabini and tremble. I shall go with you. Here, take this sword. I have no use for it with my superior technique.

Leonidis: Finally, my beautiful sword comes back to daddy.

(As the party is leaving a giant mutated mountain lion attacks the party.)

If party defeated Sabini,

Lion: Grrrrrrrrr!

Eduardus: Terrae, stand back I’ll defend you my love.

Caeser: What is that?

(Sabini jumps out of nowhere.)

Sabini: I will protect you. I’ve mastered the lion strike. It only has power to defeat this lion whose source has been corrupted by Corydon Deus.)

If party defeated Sabini,

Lion: Grrrrrrrrr!

Eduardus: Terrae, stand back I’ll defend you my love.

Caeser: What is that?

(Sabini jumps in front of the party.)

Sabini: I will protect you. I’ve mastered the lion strike. It only has power to defeat this lion whose source has been corrupted by Corydon Deus.

# ---Areas Opened Up By Dropship---

(When the party lifts off from the dropship the world has completely changed. The oceans of the world have become blood red. The entire world looks like the Heremus. The Heremus has become green. Trees and brush have begun to sprout everywhere. Even the constant storms have stopped.)

## Drunken Felnis

(When the party enters the drunken Felnis everything is changed. There is a large pit in the center of the bar with monsters fighting each other. There are seats located all around the pit with patrons shouting and jeering. There are girls walking around wearing bunny ears dressed in blouses that show off their midriff and miniskirts.)

Gregorios: Remember I told you I was going to open up a battle pit? With Corydon Deus revived, business is booming. There are hunks from all over the world coming to my bar to pit their Corydon Deus monstrosities against each other. It’s so exciting. I didn’t realize there were so many handsome men in this world. So what you gonna do? Did you bring your monsters?

If yes or no,

Gregorios: You don’t have any monsters. Go out there and get you some. It’s as easy as picking up a guy at the bar. You get that monsters health dangerously weak then you blow this here whistle and it will obey your every command. That filthy beast becomes your pet. I like wear tight black leather with a whip to capture monsters. That’s how I capture most of these monsters in this bar; especially that one playing the piano over there. I’m so extra, no I’m not. Come back and talk to me when you got some monsters.

(Player receives whistle.)

If the player talks to Gregorios again without any monsters,

Gregorios: What are you hitting on me? You don’t have any monsters so why you talking to me?

If the player talks to Gregorius again with some monsters,

Gregorius: Register your monsters and set up your party. Let’s get ready to rumble, boyz!

## Drunken Felnis NPCs

Depressed Patron: I put my home up for collateral on this match. If I don’t win my family will be homeless and I’ll probably kill myself. It’s a hard life being a gambling addict.

Rowdy Patron: What better time pass during the end of the world than gambling all your money on monsters? If I don’t win this match I’ll probably kill everyone in this room and take their money.

Waitress: I captured a monster by pretending to be a damsel in distress. The monster saw me screaming, laying on the ground, and intended to descend upon me to finish what it thought was a weak prey. My friend jumped out from the bushes as it is about to devour me and hit it over the head. Then I blew my whistle. My monster’s in the championship. That’s what I call entrepreneurship.

# Heremus After Corydon Deus(Optional)

## Camp Npcs

Old Widow: Caeser, you’re one handsome man. I don’t see Theresa. Did you guys break up? If so, mama can take care of you.

Shopkeeper1: Reditus or Reditt, makes no matter to me, I still need to make money.

Shopkeeper2: Caeser move on. I can’t justify selling anything to you.

Shopkeeper3: I’ll sell you something but I’m charging double.

Lonely Woman: This tower goes so high now. I can see into the distance. I see Reditus towns and roads. I see the fire coming from heaven consuming all that stands in its way except us. It’s such a great time to be Reditt.

**Rediit Herdsman**

Rediit Herdsman:  So you became a Reditus, huh Caeser? You joined the very people that persecuted us for so many years. I question myself as to why gave you the armor. I did it for your father. I assume he’s of Corydon Deus now. May Corydon Deus bless his soul.

Herdsman wife: My husband always grumbles about making your armor and why he ever did it. I tell him he’s too quick to judge people. He should wait some time to see the wickedness in others hearts before helping them.

**Young Married Couple**

Young married wife: I want my sweater back. I can’t bear the thought of it warming a Reditus scum like you.

Young married husband: And why are you in my tent? Don’t even look at my wife piece of filth.

Baby: Wah! Wah!

**Family with Lots of Kids**

Mother: If I give birth to another child I’ll name him Augustus. If I give birth to a turd, I’ll name him Caeser.

Father: No wonder Theresa left you. You show no loyalty to your people. Stay away from my kids. For all I know you could be a Reditus child molester.

Young Child: Daddy! The creepy Reditus is looking at me.

Small Girl: I heard all Reditus each shit. I left some in a pile outside my tent for you.

Shotgun Boy: I want my shotgun back now. Wait, better yet, I hope you shoot your eye out with that shotgun.

Badshot Girl: I’ve been working on my shooting skills. I’m pretty much sure I could hit a Reditus scum bag like you from 200 meters away.

No Sword For Me: I’ve been practicing my sword fighting. Caeser, I’m pretty much sure I can take you on now.

**Kids Fighting**

Miriam: Your father is a good man. He allowed me and Socrates to marry. If only you would’ve grown up to be like him.

Billy: Hey Caeser, if you don’t stop being a Reditus now, when you leave camp, I’m gonna bang your mom.

Tommy: You know what’s the coolest thing about my mom and Socrates marrying? I have a really hot stepsister now.

Billy's Sister: Tommy keeps looking at me. I wonder if there’s a mandate for that?

Socrates: Your father save my life. I owe him everything. How could you just go throw that all away Caesar?

If player helped Old Widow,

Old Widow: Caeser, I don’t care if you’re Rediits or Reditus. You’ve done a great service for me finding what you could about my husband.

If player didn’t help Old Widow,

**Camp Guards**

The camp guards are after you. If they see you they will engage in combat.

Camp Guard: Caeser, traitor. Prepare to die Reditus scum.

**Hunter Tent**

Hunter: I don’t have anything against you Caesar, but I can’t be seen talking you. Please leave this tent.

**Rediit Childless Couple**

Elderly Husband: You’re not child of mine.

Elderly wife: My husband almost had a heart attack when he heard you joined the Reditus. He’s so disappointed in you.

Desperate man: We no longer have water problems, but I find myself always thirsty I don’t know why.

**Kweh Tent**

Kweh butcher: No Kweh meat for you.

Kweh Guard: Watching Kweh all day long la la la. Smell the Kweh all day long la la la.

Man Chasing Kweh: It’s been months and I still can’t catch this Kweh.

**Chief Hunter Home**

Chief Hunter: While your father was gone I figured out how to fix the drones on my own. I modified their settings so that they’ll kill any Reditus they see on the spot. That means get out here Caeser.

Chief HunterWife: My husband was so happy when both of you came back. He can’t believe that you would betray your father and join the Reditus.

## Excalibur

Seer: It’s time for you to defeat the great beast that lives within and take back your home. Do not be fooled, he’s not just a normal cat. The corruption wrought by Corydon Deus has corrupted his very essence. Address your cat as Billy de Baal. Then you will see his true nature.

(Goes to his home)

Caeser: Billy de Baal. I have come to reclaim my home. You no longer have authority here. This habitat belongs to humans.

Billy de Baal: (Speaking in Demonic Voice); Foolish, pathetic, human. You think you own this home, you do not. I will shit and lick everywhere as I please. If I want food you shall give me. You will serve my every whim. When it’s time to scratch my back you will do so or die. If you wish to challenge my authority over this home we shall go outside and you shall face my feline wrath.

(1) Caeser: Indeed, I wish to reclaim my home.

(Battle begins against the super boss Billy de Baal.)

(2) Caeser: Let me think about that. I’m not sure if I’m ready to confront a demon possessed cat.

If player talks to Billy de Baal again,

Billy they Baal: You have come again human to tickle my fancy in combat to the death?

(Again options one and two present themselves.)

After defeating Billy de Baal,

Billy de Baal: I yield human. I yield. I shall let you reclaim this home. But please, my one last request before you go. Rub my belly and give me a treat. Please O mighty human, please.

* 1. Ceaser: Yes, anything for you Billy de Baal.

Billy de Baal: I actually possessed your cat. I’m a Fabricius who can control different cats. Use my power at your discretion. (Billy de Baal turns into the Fabricius, Cattus Felis.

* 1. Ceaser: No, you almost just killed me.

Billy de Baal: I may not be able to defeat you, but I will shit in the corner every day and make you pick it up. Ha! I will have my revenge.

(Caeser speaks to the Seer)

Caeser: I have defeated my cat in battle. He was strong, but I prevailed. He shall no longer have dominion over my home.

Seer: Excellent, now take thy sword from the chest.

(Caeser opens the chest but there’s nothing inside.)

Caeser: Where’s the sword?

Seer: Oh I forgot to put it back. It’s up on the shelf.

(Player receives Excalibur)

## Theresa’s Tent

Theresa’s father: Where is Theresa? Where’s your father?

Caeser: Corydon Deus killed them both.

Theresa’s mother: How can this be so? Where’s my daughter. I want to know now!

Caeser: Like I said………

Theresa’s father: You’re hiding something. I want the truth now!

Jester: It’s true. I was there.

Caeser: If you like you can check Airloft’s data feed…………..

Theresa’s father: No. no. no. no. no. Just go I was a fool to send my daughter with you.

Theresa’s mother: My Theresa, ohhhhh my poor Theresa. Please come back I want to see you one time.

Caeser: I’m sorry it’s my fault. If I’d known the truth about Corydon Deus none of this would’ve ever happened. I would’ve stopped my father before leaving this camp.

Theresa’s father: Be careful what you say. There’s someone new as high priest ruling in your father stead. If they hear what you’re saying about Corydon Deus you could be burned.

Caeser: I don’t think that’s possible. I’m much more powerful than you remember.

Theresa’s father: If what you say is true, then please do whatever you can to save us from Corydon Deus. I will stop worshiping this god. He’s killed my precious Theresa. Speak no more of this. We’ll try to continue on living like normal so as not to draw any suspicion.

## Caeser’s home

Caeser’s mother: Where’s your father?

Caeser: He’s become possessed by Corydon Deus.

Caeser’s mother: He’s become what?

Caeser: Father is gone, lost in the infinite void of Corydon Deus, unable to return.

Caeser’s mother: Please try to find him. I don’t care if it’s the infinite void; let our love overcome that void.

Caeser: I will try mother.

Caeser’s mother: I told that stubborn fool he would bring ruin to us all, now see.

Caeser: I’m sorry for failing to bring him back. I only wanted to see him happy nothing else.

Caeser’s mother: Don’t apologize. That religious fanatic dug his own grave. We all have following that ridiculous religion of ours. Many people in camp know that you’ve joined the Reditus. You’re seen as a traitor. Be careful Caeser. I can only do so much to protect you.

Caeser: I’ll be fine mother. The Fabricius strengthen us. We also can cast magic now. Magic is not bad, but those who use it are. The true one created magic, but we abuse it. I will not follow in my father’s footsteps.

Caeser’s mother: Go fast Caeser. Save your father. I won’t let him pass away before getting an ear full from me.

## The Tower of Corydon Deus

(Emboldened by the resurgence of Corydon Deus the Rediits have rebuilt their tower to Corydon Deus. Caesar attempts to destroy the tower. Caesar’s climb to the tower is met with fierce resistance from the beasts and monsters which Corydon Deus has unleashed upon the world. Caesar is also unable to use magic while climbing. Corydon Deus has put a giant force field around the tower which emanates an eerie aura that gives the tower a luminescent glow that is both ominous and majestic. This force field prevents Caesar from using magic.)

(Outside the tower)

Gustav the Magician: It’s so suffocating here. The tower is absorbing magic. To use magic here would be detrimental to us and beneficial the monsters who have taken residence upon this tower; therefore, we should make every effort to use our weapons to avoid invoking the tower’s wrath.

Terrae: I also get the same eerie feeling from this tower. We shall ascend this tower and destroy whatever beast that is absorbing magic for its own.

(The party reaches the top. At the top of the tower the Corydon Deus statue which used to reside in the base of the tower is now at the top. The statue is now doubled in size. Rediits are walking before it and stop suddenly when the player reaches the top. They look at the party and then look at the statue.

Rediits: O mighty statue, Arise! The infidels are upon us.

(The stone statue becomes animated and attacks the party. Battle begins.)

Corydon Deus Statue: Your magic has given me life. I shall crush you for all to see.

(After battle the tower begins to crumble. A timer is set. The player has a certain amount of time to reach the bottom of the tower before dying. The timer is running even during battles. Once the player reaches the bottom of the tower, the tower crumbles, and all the shouts of Rediits who were on top of the tower can be heard.)

Jester: Another one bites the dust. That’s how the cookie crumbles.

Caeser: All those Rediits just died. I knew some of those people. Some of them were decent people. Blind people, but decent, and for what? A stone statue?

(The Magicia descends from the statue. Player receives Golem Magicia.)

## Boremaug

(The player can now fight a giant boar named Boar Maug when trying to pick another desert rose.)

Caeser: Here it comes.

## Cannibal Rediit

(If the player chose to allow the Cannibal Rediit to live this opens up the possibility of fighting a special breed of dog she bred while you were gone. Again she tries to eat you if you talk to her and a battle ensues. Once you beat her the player receives a special item.)

Cannibal Rediit: I really did learn my lesson. I stopped eating people altogether. I trained my dogs to hunt other dogs. I become quite the connoisseur of dog meat. But once you have human you never stop missing that juicy, succulent taste. You’re looking mighty tasty Caeser. While you are gone I bred a new type of dog. I call it the Killer Mix. Sick’em Killer Mix.

After Battle,

Leonidis: You have taken advantage of the weak and helpless; therefore, I sentence you to death evil woman.

(Leonidis the woman’s head and her dogs begin feeding on her body.)

## The Security Protocol Defense Bot

This boss the player can once again revisit and fight.

# Hunt For The Fabricius

**The Fabricius will be hard for the player to find. They must go into cities and talk to people in order to find hints as to the location of where the hiding Fabricius are.**

## ****Jormungandr****

### Quest Npcs

Person In Bathroom: I was sitting on the toilet this morning and I heard a loud movement. At first I thought it was my bowels, but it became more pronounced over time. I quickly put my ear to the toilet seat and I heard what must be the largest turd float through the cities sewers in the history of Tonsorem.

Man Standing by a well: Why are there snake scales in my water.

The well of the city can be entered by the player. There is a gate through which the player can enter the sewers but it will remain locked until the player speaks with either of the above Npcs. Once either of the npcs are spoken to new dialogue options are opened with the mayor of South Tonsorem.

If the player has spoken to one of the above NPCs,

### Finding ****Jormungandr****

Mayor: How will we survive? The water is drying up and we are running only on our water reserves which we kept in the sewers below the city; speaking of which, the water here has developed a nasty funk lately. Normally our water tastes kinda of funky, but there’s no word for this funk. This funk is the funkmaster of funk. These are desperate times and everyone who can fight is out fighting the monsters. Will you go into the sewers and find out what is causing this funkiness.

* 1. Yes

Mayor: Great! Here is the key to the sewers. You have to enter the well by rope and open the gate located at the bottom.

* 1. No

Mayor: Please change your mind. Everytime I drink this water it feels like I’m licking a frog. Not like I lick frogs or ever have, even on a dare, hmm…anyways.

(The player navigates through many sewer lines which are blocked by gates. To proceed through one gate they must enter a open sewer line adjacent to a locked one. There will be a handle which they must turn to open the gate. The gates must be opened in the right order in order to proceed.)

(Jormngandr is a giant serpent.)

The party comes to a large repository of water. The water ripples and a serpent slowly rises from the water.

Jormngandr: Terrae it’s been a long time, child of Maduin. You have grown more graceful with age. Your time with the humans has treated you well.

Terrae: Happy to see you Jormngandr. Please grant us your power so we may defeat Corydon Deus.

Jormngandr: For you anything Terrae, but you know the rules. An heir to the power of the Fabricius must be tested. Are you ready?

1. Yes. (The full form of Jormngandr rises from the water. Battle begins.)
2. No. Jormngandr: You’ve come all this way for nothing? That’s quite odd.

After battle,

(Player recives the Magicius Jormngandr.)

## Cthulhu

### Dead Man’s Cove

Mr. Blunderbuss: Arrhhh….. The blood red ocean be mighty bad for a pir….thief. With the lack of traffic is no booty to plunder you see. It’s happening again. The world is come to ruin. My mates have been going crazy. In night a strange being haunts their dreams. Blood curdling screams in the middle the night, never seen anything like it in my entire life. My mates can’t sleep. They are too scared to sleep. One young mate, after seeing this creature in his dream, woke up and jumped out his window. I need your help mates. Find this being the haunts their dreams and kill it.

Gustav the Magician: For that we need to enter its lair. It lives in a dream realm that is shared by all pir….I mean thieves. One of us has to have a thieves dream. Jester must fall asleep in the place of the haunting. I will use my psychic energies to draw us into his dream and we shall hunt this being.

Jester: Whoa! Whoa! You want to use me as bait. I can be a cuckold but I can’t be bait. What if this monster devours me before you can even enter my dream. I value my soul.

Mr. Blunderbuss: You do this for me Jester and I’ll give me daughter as your wife and make you Prince of thieves.

Jester: Prince of thieves…… I like the sound. How much booty does this entail?

Mr. Blunderbuss: Me daughter is quite the buxom lass me matey.

Jester: I’m not speaking of that booty. How much loot will I get?

Mr. Blunderbuss: After I pass everything is yours.

Jester: Alright, I’ll do it.

Mr. Blunderbuss: When you’re ready come speak to me and we’ll get you ready for bed.

* 1. Mr. Blunderbuss: You ready?
     1. Caeser: Jester is ready.

Mr. Blunderbuss: (Camera fades in and out being night time now.) All right Jester, I’ll give you some of me rum to get you groggy and ready for bed.

* + 1. Caeser: Jester is stil a little scared.

Mr.Blunderbuss: Alright matey, just tell me when you’re ready.

Once the quest is started entire party is lying in bed. Gustav the magician touches Jester after he is asleep. The party enters the dreamworld of Jester.

### Cthulhu’s Dreamworld

(In Jester’s dream the party is transported to a massive vault of multiple platforms connected by stairs. Every chest is locked and Jester is unable to unlock the chests. When the player tries to first open a chest Jester speaks.)

Jester: This is a horrible dream. I’m in a place of unlimited wealth and I can’t open a single chest to get the loot. No wonder these pirates go crazy in these nightmares.

Cthulhu (A voice speaks): Welcome to my unending terror you no good pirate. The terror unleashed by Corydon Deus has awoken me from my slumber and has released me from the Fabricius world upon the world of men. It is my pleasure to drive you into madness.

Jester: Ahh that voice. It keeps ringing in my head. Make it stop! Make it stop!

Terrae: Let’s hurry before he goes mad.

Caeser: I also hear that voice too. My head, it’s hurting.

Eduardus: Let’s hurry before we all die from madness.

(A timer is set. The player must find Cthulhu and defeat him before the timer runs out. Characters will randomly be confused when they enter battle. Cthulhu has two illusions of himself contained within the level. When the player attempts to interact with the illusion Cthulhu disappears.)

Cthulhu 1: You’ve gone mad. You think you see me, but you don’t. You only see an image of yourself as you truly are now. I am you and you are me. We are one, one in madness.

Cthulhu 2: Madness is freedom. Take my yoke upon you and give me control. In death you’ll find rest, rest from the madness.

### Illusion of Theresa

Theresa: It’s your fault I died Caeser. You didn’t protect me from your father. I should have never married you. If I hadn’t I’d still be alive. My mother and father never got to say goodbye.

Caeser: I’m so sorry my love. I should have never brought you with me. I was naïve in regards to my father’s intentions. I had no idea. I’m so sorry. Please.. Forgive me.

(Caeser falls to his knees and begins weeping)

Caeser: Please Theresa……

Theresa: It’s all your fault……mwhahahahaha

(Theresa slowly turns in the Cthulhu. Then she disappears.)

### Illusion of Neo’s Wife(In Party?)

Neo: PO! PO! PO! PO!

Neo’s Wife: PO! PO!

Neo: PO! PO! PO!!

Neo’s Wife: PO!!

Neo: PO! PO!!!

Neo’s Wife: PO!!!!!!

Neo: PO!!!!

(Neo spins around and faints)

Illusion of the Sabini (In Party?) And

### Battle against Cthulhu and Reward

Player finds Cthulhu,

Jester: I have found you now Cthulhu. You can no longer deceive with your allusions. I shall open any treasure chest that I find and you can’t stop me.

Caeser: We shall teach you a new reality. In this reality you serve us and help us defeat Corydon Deus. But first you must learn your lesson for tormenting these helpless sailors.

(After battle player receives Cthulhu Magicia.)

(The party wakes from their slumber to find themselves once again in Pirates Cove.)

Jester: What a horrible dream. To live in such a world would be hell.

Leonidis: It was as if I was back in the underworld again.

Mr. Blunderbuss: Arrrgh… You brave adventurers be back to. Now tell me what you found.

Caeser: Your pirates will be safe now. The Fabricius Cthulhu is now in our possession.

Mr. Blunderbuss: Then a deal is a deal. Jester you shall take my daughter as your bride.

(Two girls walk into the room: one thin and beautiful with long blonde hair and one with brown hair, fat as a cow.)

Jester: I thought you only had one daughter.

Mr. Blunderbuss: Arrgghh….I got two. One whom I love and protect the most. This daughter ye shall marry. Hilda, meet your husband.

(The fat and ugly one steps forward.)

Jester: Hold that thought there’s a world to be saving. I’ll be back and then we’ll be married.

(Jester quickly runs out the room. Party is laughing.)

## ****Jotnar****

### Camp Yew Npcs

Bullcook 1: When th' men git blootert ah dress up as princess o' th' yew. Ah dance aroond th' fire lik' a wild banshee.

Bullcook 2: You’re ye here tae wirk th' wood tae? Falling logs is mighty wirk. I’ll wash yer bunk in th' bunkhouse fur twa pieces o' gowd?

1. Caeser: No, we’re not here to work the wood. Where in search of Fabricius. Have you seen any?
2. Bullcook 2: A mighty giant noo wanders th' woods. Best speak tae Ewan. He wid ken where tae fin' it.

MacGregor: We gathered a stoatin band o' lumberjacks tae huv a go tae rid th' wood o' this giant, bit with one swipe o' his hand brave 'n' mighty men, a'maist yin third o' th' camp died.

Lumberjack: Since th' moon turned blood rid th' trees hae turned an awfy color. Th' bark is black 'n' th' leaves are amber color.

Lumberjack: A lumberjack’s life is tied tae th' life o' th' forest. If th' forest is dying th' hert o' th' lumberjack weighs mighty heavy. Th' gloom o' death th'willies upon us tae.

Lumberjack: Th' stoatin giant jotnar’s skin wis as pure tough as mighty steel. Oor ax blows simply glanced aff o' him. He didn’t even wince. If ye seek th' mighty giant, ye wull coupon yer end laddie.

Camp Wench: Ohhhh what a handsome man. I always dreamt of being with royalty.

* 1. Eduardus: Ahhh a rustic camp wench. Parodies are often made about these beastly beauties. Alas, if only it wasn’t the end of the world I would indulge in taming this beast.
  2. Terrae: Eduardus, you never change.

### Timothy Side Quest

McGwonan: Mah favorite bullcook, Timothy, haes foolishly gaen aff intae th' forest 'n' hasn’t returned. He tellt th' other bullcooks that he wis gaun aff tae coupon Jotnar. He’s a brave laddie, bit he’s wabbit as a wifie. Timothy wull ainlie end up bein' a tasty desert fur Jotnar. He’s ferr th' succulent laddie. I haven’t seen a wifie in five years. Kin ye search fur th' laddie? There’s a reward in it fur ye.

* 1. Yes,

McGwonan: I’m sae happy. Ye don’t ken howfur grateful a'm. Please return fleet wi' word o' that laddie.

* 1. No,

McGwonan: Mah tears ur as lairge as th' foremaist spring in th' forest. Please dae something.

(Timothy is located deep within the forest opposite of the direction of Jotnar. If the player attempts to go in the direction of Jotnar they will be stopped until they speak with Ewan. The player finds Timothy stuck in the bough of a large tree. A large two-headed bear is below the tree screaming and roaring at Timothy.)

Timothy: Please save me fae this bear. He’s gaen mad fae th' sickness. Th' bears ne'er used tae fash us lik' this. Please save me.

(Bear turns around and roars. Battle begins againt Bearusbus.)

After battle,

Timothy: Cheers, ah thought ah wis a goner fur sure. Kin ye please tak' me back tae camp? Th' forest isn’t whit it used tae be.

McGwonan: Ah timothy you’re alive, sae happy tae see ye. Noo be a guid laddie 'n' git in mah belly.

### Ewan and The Search for Jotnar

Ewan: Welcome tae mah camp. We ur th' source o' wood fur th' Reditus. Th' woods hae become under th' sole ownership o' a Fabricius cried Jotnar. Howfur we know his name ye kin ask? Aw the time he swipes 'n' kills mah comrades he screams in a stereotypical ogre voice, “Joooohhhtttnnnnaaaarrr! meee Jooohhhhttnnnaaarrrr!” His skin is as pure tough as th' walls o' Ehsran.

Caeser: I may have a solution for that. We have the power of magic. This may be the source of his downfall.

Ewan: Th' power o' magic ye say…… i’d loue tae witness that. Tell ye whit. Ah wull accompany ye intae th' forest. Thare kin be some trees blocking oor wey. I’ll cut thaim doon sae we kin bygae thro'.

Eduardus: Thou art service to the Reditus will be rewarded brave soul.

Ewan: I’ve heard that voice afore ower th' trascender. Ah see i’m in th' service o' king Eduardus. It wull be a buzz m' laird.

Eduardus: Likewise. A wonderful buzz indeed.

The first tree the party encounters,

Ewan: Staun back a' o' ye, this tree is aff tae tak' a mighty lumberjack lik' masell. Minard ye seem lik' ferr th' artist. Ye draw a picture o' mah muscles glimmering in th' sun as th' sweat drips aff mah brow. Maybe you’ll learn something aboot manhood. I’ll shaw howfur a real man cuts doon a tree.

Gustav the Magician: Hey, a real man is more than a burly lumberjack. A real man can also be a master of illusion.

Ewan: How come be a master o' illusion whin ye git th' real thing?

(Ewan flexes his massive muscles.)

Minard: Mr. Ewan can you teach me how to have massive muscles like you.

Ewan: Sure thing laddie. I’ll teach you by cutting doon this muckle great tree. It's mah foremaist lesson.

(Gustav the Magician has the look of exasperation as Ewan cuts down the tree. Once the party reaches a clearing in the trees they will confronted by Jotnar. Jotnar enters the clearing with his massive gait clearing the trees that block his way as a man opens a shower curtain.)

Jotnar: Meeeee Jotnnaaarrr. Human enter my forest. I sssaaaayyyy nooooo. Humans will die for trespassing.

Ewan: (Speaking to Minard) Watch this laddie. Hey Jotnar! Come and get some you oversized piece of shit for brains.

(Ewan rips off his shirt and takes out his ax.)

Jotnar: Human funny. Human make Jotnar laugh. Jotnar swat human like fly.

(Jotnar swipes at Ewan hitting and causing him to fly against a stone. Ewan is knocked out.)

Caeser: Jotnar, you listen…….

Gustav the Magician(Speaking to Caeser) Caeser, I got this. (Now speaking to Jotnar.) Great Almighty Jotnar, I understand your strength is great and you’re like no other. You are a mighty giant. I also believe you are incredibly intelligent.

Jotnar: Human flatters me, say more, say more.

Gustav the Magician: I wish to perform a test. If you can prove that my magic isn’t magic then you’ll quit attacking the lumberjacks of Yew forest.

Jotnar: And if I can’t I’ll bite off all your heads.

Jester: I do like my head.

Eduardus: You have a pretty head. If you were a woman our relationship would be different.

Terrae: I don’t think it matters if he’s a woman or not.

Jotnar: Shut up stupid humans. I take test.

Gustav the Magician: So for my first magic test I shall make Ewan disappear into thin air.

Jotnar: Impossible!

(Gustav the Magician moves over to the body of unconscious Ewan. He places his cape over Ewan. He starts waving his hands in a really distracting motion causing the eyes of Jotnar to be distracted. He once again lifts up his cape to show Jotnar that Ewan is still there.)

Gustav the Magician: Watch and observe O mighty Jotnar. Abracadabra! Abracadabree! Abracadabro!

(Gustav lifts up the cape and Ewan is no longer there, but instead has been replaced by Minard.)

Jotnar: I know he’s here. You must’ve moved him behind the stone stupid human.

(Jotnar begins searching behind the stone.)

Jotnar: He must be in the trees.

(Jotnar begins knocking over all the trees nearby getting more and more angry as he goes.)

Jotnar: What did you do with him foolish human? Impossible. Nobody outsmart Jotnar. You hid him under the stone didn’t you?

(Jotnar begins picking up stones and throwing them. After destroying much of the nearby forest Jotnar is tired.)

Jotnar: Aghhh Jotnar tired. Jotnar give up. Jotnar has little strength left, but enough strength to try to eat puny humans for tricking Jotnar.

Gustav the Magician: But we had an agreement.

Jotnar: Jotnar tricked by deceiving humans. No agreement. Now die.

(Suddenly an axe flies from nowhere and gets stuck in Jotnar’s flesh, blood spurts out.)

Ewan: Wey tae think Gustav. A tired giant’s flesh becomes supple allowing th' blade tae thirl it. Now’s th' best time tae attack!

(After defeating Jotnar player receives Jotnar Magicia.)

Caeser: How did you make Ewan disappear?

Gustav the Magician: A true magician never reveals his tricks of the trade. Isn’t that right Minard?

Minard: A magician bends matter with his mind and conform the world to his allusions.

Ewan: Ah woke up in some bloody hole. Disoriented, ah woke up, 'n' ah could hear a hail ruckus gaun oan up 'boon that’s howfur ah found my way.

(The party begins laughing)

Ewan: I’ve hud a guid time wi' ye men 'n' lassies. I’d lik' tae continue this adventure 'n' save th' world with ye.

Eduardus: It would be a pleasure to have you continue your service to the king.

Ewan: Off we go them.

## Mare

### Okay Corral

Okay Corral looks like a typical wild western town from American history. The town is filled with hologram advertisements in the skyline as tumbleweeds roll through the center of town. The buildings are made out of rustic wood following the architecture pattern of the Wild West. There’s a saloon and hotel in one, sheriff’s office, general store, and several homes owned by residents. People ride robotic hover horses through town. An old lady sweeps her porch in front of the general store. In the saloon robots dance and sing on stage as females dressed in bunny outfits serve drinks to those in the crowd.

### Saloon Cutscene

(Caeser is sitting at the bar with Eduardus and Terrae)

Caeser: Theresa would be so happy to see this. She was so fascinated with the ways of the Reditus. You people are so different from us in every way. After a massive storm in the Heremus occasionally a rainbow might grace us with its presence during a lull in the storms. I would say that rainbow represents the Reditus. So many different colors and variations yet you people are still one.

Terrae: It used to be like that, but not so much anymore as you’ve seen. We lost our unity and purpose. This is why the God of the stillness has allowed this to happen.

Caeser: You also know of this god of the stillness? I haven’t told this to anyone, but when we were being sucked into the void by Corydon Deus. I felt an immense power push us from below; we were well beyond Airloft’s weight carrying capabilities. Then a small voice spoke to me and said that Theresa was still alive right after Corydon Deus……. I thought if only the Phoenix could bring back my Theresa when the Phoenix brought back to life Leonidis. I almost envied Leonidis. Maybe this god can bring back to life my Theresa?

Terrae: Maybe Caeser. Maybe…..You know, very few Reditus acknowledge this god. Most Reditus believe that science and minerals are the foundation of the Reditus, but I believe there is more than just minerals and science that prop up the Reditus.

Eduardus: There is King Eduardus the great!

Terrae: There he goes again.

(Leonidis sits down. At the table.)

Leonidis: Terrae, although your beauty hasn’t changed a bit since the days of the Gestalt Empire something else has. There is a confidence in you now. You are no longer the half Fabricius, half human girl I remember who was confused in her identity.

Terrae: You are the still handsome and dashing general I remember. If you hadn’t of died, I wonder……

Eduardus: I wonder what!?

Terrae: If I would still treat him as an uncle. Don’t worry my Eduardus, you’re still the dashing Playboy I fell love with.

Leonidis: You are a lucky man Eduardus.

### Okay Corral Npc

### Wild Garret Hunts the Mare

Wild Garrett: Welcome to Okay Corral pardner where everyone is supposed to be doing okay. It’s just pardner, we’re not doing okay. You see, ever since the Fabricius were unleashed on the world, there’s this Fabricius whose been creating a ruckus. Before we were already having trouble with cowboys raiding our land and stealing our hooch, but this Fabricius they call Mare managed to round up and unite all the cowboy gangs. Now we’re in big trouble. All this town is got is me and my trusty sidekick, this here laser pistol. I used to be sufficient enough to keep these gangs under control, but now I got my hands tied. Can you help me out?

(1)Caeser: Yes , we would be more than happy to hunt down this Fabricius to help you keep the town safe

(2) Caeser: No, our hands are a little tied in right now. We’ll come back later alright.

Talk again,

* 1. Wild Garret: So did you change your mind.

Caeser: Sure did pardner, let’s go get these ruffians.

Caeser: No, just wanted to see how you were.

If yes,

Wild Garrett: I’m pretty much sure the ruffians are holed up somewhere down to the South West from here. Even though I know where their camp is I dare not go there. I have rocksolid kahunas, but that Mare has got my kahunas ruffled.

Player reaches camp to the southeast,

Wild Garret: Now here’s the plan, I don’t think it’s a good idea to bust into camp guns blazing. The gunpowder I think is stored in the center of camp. I say we have Airloft sneak in the camp and blow up the gunpowder as a diversion. When all hell is breakin loose, then we bust into camp take down these son of a guns. Whaddaya say? Or you just wanna go in guns blazing, it’s your choice.

1. Caeser: I think making a diversion would be a wise choice. Airloft, along the way set up traps that will further hinder the cowboys during the confusion.

Airloft: This is a logical choice. I will make calculations which indicate the possible projection of all cowboy velocities during the diversion, thus finding the most optimal places to deploy traps.

1. Caeser: I always enjoyed a good battle. Let’s blow these cowboys to smithereens.

Leonidis: You are a brave man, but not a good general; it’s going to be a hard fight for all of us. I hope you know what you’re doing.

If you sneak in with Airloft,

(If the player chooses to use a diversion some of the enemies will have been eliminated by traps so they may be less in number depending on where you placed the traps. Also, they will not have been alerted to the presence of the player so they will come and battle in gaps as the player moves through the camp. The enemies will appear in cinematic sequences one battle after the other.)

If you charge in,

Caeser enters the camp and shouts “Huuuzzzzaaaahhhh! You cowardly cowboys here we come!

Wild Garret: Yeeehhhaaaawwwww boys come and get some!

(If the player chooses to charge in none of the enemies will have been eliminated by traps so they will be double in number. Also, they will have been alerted to the presence of the player so they will come in waves towards the player in cinematic sequences one battle after the other.)

The player reaches Mare,

(Mare is half human and half horse. Mare is wearing cowboy chaps and vest, his muscular body showing underneath. His spurs rattle as he walks up to the player as the sunset sparkles in the background casting its shadowy gaze upon the Earth before retiring. He hawks a loogie when he reaches the player. He takes off his cowboy hat and bows at the party.)

Mare: I heard you’re looking for somebody sheriff. I’m your huckleberry. You can’t tame this mare you filthy human. You try to ride up on me I’ll kick you right off, understand?

Wild Garret: I’ve been looking for ya. Your cowboying days are over. Ever since you came to Gaia you’ve been causin a ruckus. Bout time somebody lassoes you and brings you into the corral.

(Wild Garret looks at the party)

Wild Garrett: This is just between me and this bad mouthed bronco.

(Wild Garret and the Bronco stand about 30 meters apart.)

Wild Garret: Get ready to draw hombre.

Mare: I was born ready to draw.

(Both put their hands on their side arms and get ready to draw. Suddenly the battle begins between Wild Garret and the Mare.)

Mare battle,

This battle is different than other battles as the player is switched to a first person mode facing Mare. Mare will lob grenades, shoot slow and fast moving bullets and move side to side. The player will have a target cursor appear on screen and must track these objects and intercept them from the player’s target cursor. In order to win the battle the player must destroy the incoming objects fast enough while shooting Mare. When the player pushes the fire button a fire animation will appear from the cursor. The player will use the left analog or mouse to move the cursor. If the incoming objects reach a certain animation which indicates closeness Wild Garret will take damage. As Mare’s HP gets lower the objects appearing on screen will become more numerous.

Mare is defeated,

Wild Garret: (As Mare turns into Fabricius): I’m your huckleberry.

Minard: That was amazing. While you were gun slinging I painted a picture to immortalize your gun slinging talent for eternity. Behold!

(Minard unfolds his painting. It is displayed on the screen.)

Sabini(If Sabini is in the party): You should paint a picture of my Kung fu prowess.

## Akuma

## Gilgamesh

Gilgamesh will be the final enemy in the monster arena if the player manages to make it to the end with their team.

## Death Bringer

In order to find Death Bringer the player must fly around in the drop ship until they randomly enter battle with the boss. Upon defeating Death Bringer the player received Stone Gaze Magicia.

## Shiva

## Hanuman

## Michael

## Zeus

## Diablo

### Underworld

(The player again jumps into the hole leading to the underworld in the Heremus. This time the player must fight demons as they make their way through the graveyard.)

When the player enters the bar again,

Soul (Female): This place is become so dreadful now. We all long knew we’re in the underworld. We only like to pretend that we’re still alive. Lately a Fabricius arrived here. He thinks he’s greater than Lich.

Soul (Male): I personally think Diablo is by far superior. He’s King of the demons. Lich was such a pushover. He always thought he was so smart with his riddles and all.

Soul (Fashionable Lady): Looks like Leonidis got a second chance. I wish he would come back. He was such a dreamy soul.

Soul (Butler): You should go speak to Lich. He’s had it with this Diablo character. Diablo treats him like he’s a second-class demon citizen.

Lich: I’ve had it with this Diablo. He goes around flapping his wings, he struts his stuff like he owns the place. I was here before him, it’s not fair. I dedicated my entire life to tormenting souls who were unqualified for the stillness. I’m at retirement age. These should be the golden days of my life. Instead I’m living life as a second rate demon. Do one thing. I sense the Fabricius living inside of you now Caeser. You prove yourself worthy once. Let’s see if you’re the greatest man that ever lived. Beat Diablo and prove yourself to be a legend among the dead.

Caeser: Legend among the dead. That’s got a nice ring to it. What do you say Leonidis? We show ourselves to be the greatest living among the dead?

Leonidis: I’m ready. Diablo has my mark upon him.

Lich: Oh wonderful! You’ll do it for me. Finally I can get back to tormenting the dead like the good old days. If you haven’t found him yet, Diablo is on the other side of the underworld. Tell him Lich sends his love.

Diablo: I was missing the party staying in the world of the Fabricius. I should’ve come here a long time ago.

Player reaches Diablo to defeat him,

Diablo: Welcome to my underworld mortal. So my spies tell me that Lich has sent you to help him reclaim his throne of the underworld. You should have remained in the land of the living mortal. You came here only to never return.

(After the battle the player receives the Magicia Diablo)

Lich: Would you like to go back to the land of the living? I’ll make sure to put in a good word so as to ensure your place in the stillness.

* 1. Yes

Lich: Begone my servant.

* 1. No

Lich: What living man likes to stay in the land of the dead? So be it, come when you’re ready.

Soul (Female): Things were so interesting when Diablo was in charge. He truly enjoyed tormenting souls. Lich just does it out a sense of duty.

Soul (Male): Just forget whatever I said about Lich. I guess his cunning won the day.

Soul (Fashionable Lady): When I was alive I used to have so many suitors. The selection here is absolutely horrendous. The men are absolutely ghostly.

Soul (Butler): A round of drinks on me my friends. You have brought order to the underworld.

## Seraphim

## Greninja

# Ehsran Space Ship

Eduardus: So you want to go get Corydon Deus?

* 1. Yes, justice can wait no longer.

Eduardus: As I said we developed a way to reach outer space. But it’s still in prototype stage. We actually haven’t launched it yet. No one’s thought of the possibility of actually trying it until now. The rocket is located in Ehsran. We must speak to Adm. Anthony and he will tell us what we must do.

* 1. No, it can wait.

Eduardus: Yes it may be wise to wait until we are stronger.

After meeting Leonidas, Adm. Anthony explains his plan to reach the moon. A senior science advisor named Mortis Shinra has developed a fuel which uses crystals from the earth. The fuel is extracted from the crystals and is named pistis. Mortis Shinra explains he named his rocket after his daughter Midgar. The only problem is that the rocket base inside Ehsran is currently occupied by the monsters of Corydon Deus. Caesar and company must split up into different groups in order to reach the rocketship. One group must fill the rocketship with pistis, while the other group distracts the monsters. Caesar and company regroup after defeating the monsters and their leader.

## Will It Launch?

Adm. Anthony: So king Eduardus has informed you of our ability to reach space, correct?

Vice Adm. Constantine: It’s suicide.

Adm. Anthony: Hold your tongue vice Adm. Constantine. These are desperate times which require desperate measures.

Vice Adm. Constantine: We tested it only in simulations. Hypothetically it should work. We should first talk to our senior engineer before putting their lives on the line. If they are lost in this gamble then things are truly lost.

(Mortis Shinra walks into the room. Suddenly the alarms start blaring.)

Adm. Anthony:(Looking at Computer) This time they are attacking the Launchpad. How would they know what we plan to do?

Terrae: Corydon Deus’ powers are great. It’s almost as if he’s a god.

Adm. Anthony: No more time for simulations. Mortis, can this happen?

Mortis Shinra: Yes, I’ve designed Midgar 1 to make it to outer space. My daughter’s name was Midgar. She always wanted to travel to space. That’s who this spaceship is named after and it must succeed. The only problem now is the monsters are attacking and the ship hasn’t been fueled. The ship requires a fuel extracted from crystals named pistis.

Caeser: We will refuel the spaceship. We will split up into groups. One group will fuel the spaceship and the other group will defend it.

(Night before launch Caeser has dream about Theresa.)

The player is treated to a cut scene where a countdown is initiated and the rocket Midgar is launched into space while the battle rages for Ehsran.

## Space

Space is minigame where you control the rocketship in the top-down arcade shoot’em up of the 90s. I’m developing the game on unreal engine 4 so I might be able to make this part looks slightly 3D. The final boss of the space between Gaia and the moon is a giant eye that is constantly looking at the spaceship wherever it moves and shooting a plasma beam and other small projectiles. He is the eye of Corydon Deus.

## The Moon

The spaceship lands on the moon. A massive stone edifice in the distance is where the party surmises that Corydon Deus has made his throne. The party gets lost because the path to the massive stone edifice is blocked with many cracks and stone slabs that rise and sink on the moon’s surface. The party becomes discouraged and when all hope seems lost a small creature the size of a child appears from behind a rising arch.

## The Party so Far

Ceaser Eduardus, Terrae, Jester, Gustav the Magician, Airloft, Leonidas, Minard

Neo V (optional), Minard

## Resputin the Great

Resputin the Great is an eccentric alien personality who is a blend of different human historical figures which he has learned about through his occasional visits to Gaia. He leads Caesar and his party to his underground colony where he and other aliens, who are called The Wanderers, have lived for thousands of years. The colony has knowledge of every language known to man from many years of studying the human race. The aliens attempt to speak to Caesar and his party in these old languages, but Caesar and his party have no knowledge of these past languages. If the player wishes to know what the NPC’s are saying they must access an outside source in the real world regarding different languages to be able to understand what they’re saying. Rasputin pretends to be Napoleon and Gandhi on several occasions.

After the party has been given a chance to replenish their supplies and wander the colony they must return to respite and the Great’s home to begin their quest to the redoubt of Corydon Deus. Rasputin the Great shows them a hidden passage which is a narrow path that leads to a cave in the underground area of the moon the cave leads to Corydon Deus. The cave itself is zero gravity so the party must float and jump through the cave. A boss awaits the party at the end of the cave. The boss has 4 heads in the shape of giant worms which have small teeth protruding from its interlayer. The body is shaped after the Minotaur.

## The Edifice of Corydon Deus

The player has control over Terrae and Airloft once inside the Edifice. They must make their way to the gate control room in order to open the gate for the others. When they enter the Edifice there on the 3rd floor they must make their way down two floors to enter the control room. When they reach the room they find Macy guarding the door along with the manifestation of Corydon Deus. The Manifestation of Corydon Deus takes the shape of a right hand but with twisted green scales that cover the hand with corruption. Macy tries to convince Terraeto abandon their cause. When convincing fails her she steps back and commands the Manifestation of Corydon Deus to attack.

## The Redoubt of Corydon Deus

Small forts surround Corydon Deus’s edifice. The tunnel places them in the basement of the redoubt. Caesar’s party makes their way through the redoubt until they finally reach the walls. When they reach the walls Rasputin begins to glow causing the surface of the moon to take on different shades of colors. The Wanderers physiology is deeply connected to the moon. The Wanderers communicate through small minute biological matter that exists in the form of bacteria that exists all over the surface of the moon. When there are dFabriciusate circumstances the bacteria automatically reflect the inner being of The Wanderers.

In response to the biological stimuli other Wanderers emerge from the crust of the moon and begin attacking Corydon Deus’s redoubt. Using the attack as a distraction the party is able to make it to the gates of Corydon Deus’s Edifice. Once they reach the gates Leonidas charges forth and breaks through a group of monsters. Terraechanges into her Fabricius form which has long lain dormant since the day magic was suppressed. Caesar shoots a rocket into the wall of the edifice creating a hole. Terraeflies through the whole supported by Airloft who is shooting enemies that try to attack her. Jester saves Leonidas who was about to be stabbed in the back by a monster. If Neo V is in the party he charges at the enemies with a spear.

## The Gate Opens

Macy, unwilling to commit her strength is teleported to the throne room of Corydon Deus. The party regroups and fights their way to the throne room of Corydon Dues for the final boss battle begins.

# List of Main Characters

Augustus

Theresa

Caeser

Eduardus

Terrae

Airloft

Gustav the magician

Rasputin the great

Macy

Sabini

Ewan

Minard

Leonidis

# List of Possesable Fabricius

## Fabricius Before Free Roam

Phoenix

Golem

Bahamut

Morana

Felis Cattus

## Free Roam

**Jormungandr**

Cthulhu

**Jotnar**

Mare

Ragnorak

Gilgamesh

Death Bringer

Shiva

Hanuman

Michael

Zeus

Diable

Greninja